



FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

U.S. Department of State

Lao Basic Course



Volume 2

School of Language Studies
East Asian & Pacific Languages
Lao Section

September 2014

About FSI

Established in 1947, the Foreign Service Institute is the United States Government's primary training institution for employees of the U.S. foreign affairs community, preparing American diplomats and other professionals to advance U.S. foreign affairs interests overseas and in Washington. FSI provides more than 600 courses—to include training in some 70 foreign languages, as well as in leadership, management, professional tradecraft, area studies, and applied information technology skills—to some 100,000 students a year, drawn from the Department of State and more than 40 other government agencies and military service branches. FSI provides support to all U.S. Government employees involved in foreign affairs, from State Department entry-level Foreign and Civil Service employees to newly-assigned Ambassadors, and to our Foreign Service National colleagues who assist U.S. efforts at some 270 posts abroad.

Table of Contents

CYCLE 43

“He’s impolite, isn’t he? Yes, he is. Nobody wants to see his face.” 199

ໃຜ, ໃຜ, ກໍ, ບໍ່ as negative inclusive indefinite nouns

CYCLE 44

“This house is bigger than that one, isn’t it? No, it, isn’t. It’s smaller.” 201

Comparative of stative verbs

CYCLE 45

“Which of these three women is the prettiest? They are equally pretty.” 205

Stative verb with ກວ່າໝູ່ as superlative degree (or limited number)

CYCLE 46

“How many dollar do you have left? (I have) two dollars left.” 209

ເຫຼືອ as a verb indicating a remainder of something

CYCLE 47

“Are we out of coffee? No, we still have some.” 212

ໝົດ contrasted with ເຫຼືອ

CYCLE 48

“Do you still have questions? Yes, I (still) do.” 217

ຍັງ ... ຢູ່ for continuing situations

CYCLE 49

“Are you still out of work? No, I got a job a long time ago.” 220

ແຕ່ດົນແລ້ວ used to indicate a situation that began in the past and continues into the present

CYCLE 50

“Your book has already been stolen, isn’t that right? 223

That’s right, it has (already been stolen).”

ຖືກ in passive constructions with certain verbs

CYCLE 51

“What color are his shoes? They’re black.” 229

Names of colors

CYCLE 52

“How well do you sing? Not very well.” 234

ໂພດ “too ...” ບໍ່ ... ປານໃດ “not very ...”, ... ປານໃດ? “How ...?”

CYCLE 53

“Does he read fast? Pretty fast.”..... 239

... ສົມຄວນ “pretty” as a modifier

CYCLE 54

“Don’t eat too much.” 242

ຢ່າ in negative request forms

CYCLE 55

“Where have you been (to)? I’ve been to the doctor’s.”..... 247

ໄປ ... ມາ used to indicate recent completion of some activity

CYCLE 56

“Where did this plane come from? It came from Bangkok..” 249

ມາແຕ່ used to show point of origin

CYCLE 57

“Why are you washing your hands? I’m washing my hand to eat.” 252

Word order of verb phrases of purpose

CYCLE 58

“From where to where? From when to when?” 258

ແຕ່...ຫາ and ຈາກ/ແຕ່...ເຖິງ/ຫາ/ສອດ in extent of space or period of time constructions

CYCLE 59

“What’s the matter with you? I have (a headache).” 266

... ເປັນຫຍັງ “what’s the matter with...?” and words referring to illness

CYCLE 60

“Why didn’t you come to school? Because I was sick.”..... 271

ເປັນຫຍັງ...ຈຶ່ງ and ເພາະວ່າ in asking and giving reasons for some activity

CYCLE 61

“How do you feel about him? I pity him.” 276

Verbs of emotion

CYCLE 62

“Do you think he will come? Yes, I think he’ll come.” 280

Verbs of thinking and saying with ວ່າ

CYCLE 63

“Is it dangerous? Yes, it’s very dangerous.” 285

Stative verbs with ຫລາຍ

CYCLE 64

“Do you believe he’ll pass the exam? Yes, I do.” 292

ຊັ້ນບໍ່? in questions

CYCLE 65

“You will read, and then what will you do? I’ll read, then I’ll go eat.” 299

ແລ້ວ as a sentence connective

CYCLE 66

“Did you write the letter yet? No, not yet. (or) Yes, I’ve already written.” 303

ແລ້ວ and ຍັງ as aspect particles

CYCLE 67

“Have you finished recording? Yes, I have. (or) No, not yet.” 310

Verb phrase with ແລ້ວໆ

CYCLE 68

“Who are you going to fix the car for? I’ll fix it for him.” 317

ໃຫ້ as a benefactive verb

CYCLE 69

“What do you want me to do? I want you to stay with him.” 322

ຢາກ and ຢາກໃຫ້

CYCLE 70

“What were you going to have him do for you? 328

I was going to have him type letters for me.”

ໃຫ້ as benefactive and causative verb

CYCLE 71

“What’s the table made of? Wood.” 332
ເຮັດດ້ວຍ with materials

CYCLE 72

“What did he write with? With a pen.” 338
ດ້ວຍ with instrumental

CYCLE 73

“What will you use for making a fire? Charcoal.” 343
Instrumental use of ໃຊ້

CYCLE 74

“What’s a clock for? To tell time.” 348
ມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບ to indicate use or purpose of

CYCLE 75

“Where’s he stationed now? Right now he’s in Pakse.” 352
Time expressions

CYCLE 76

“He will be transferred very soon, is that true? That’s right.” 358
Time expressions with direct reference to present time

CYCLE 77

“How much longer will you be here? Two more weeks.” 363
ອີກ and ຍັງອີກ with time expressions

CYCLE 78

“What kind of food do you normally like to eat? Spicy food.” 370
Modals: ມັກ

CYCLE 79

“Must he choose a guide? Yes, he must.” 374
Modals: ຕ້ອງ, ຄວນ, ອາດ, ຄື້, ຄົງ

CYCLE 80

“Have you ever been to Laos? Yes, I have. (or) No, I never have been.” 382
ເຄີຍ to indicate having experienced something

CYCLE 81

“Is there anybody that is going to help him? Yes, I am.” 386

Indefinite pronoun វិញ after ដំ

CYCLE 82

“What do we call liquid that we get from an orange? Orange juice.” 391

CYCLE 83

“What do we call a person who is always drunk? A drunkard.” 394

CYCLE 84

“What do we call a person who fixes cars? An auto mechanic” 398

CYCLE 85

“What do we call a person who pilots a plane? A pilot.” 403

Cycle 43

M-1

To be his friend	pen ph̄yan láaw	ເປັນເພື່ອນລາວ
To be involved (concerned)	njûṅ-kīaw	ຫຍຸ້ງກ່ຽວ
To live (in it)	jūu	ຢູ່
To take this road	thíaw tháaṅ sên nìi	ທາງທາງເສັ້ນນີ້
To use this room	sàj hōwṅ nìi	ໃຊ້ຫ້ອງນີ້

No one wants to be his friend.	bōo míi phǎj jâak pen ph̄yan láaw.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜຢາກເປັນເພື່ອນລາວ.
No one wants to be concerned.	bōo míi phǎj jâak njûṅ-kīaw.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜຢາກຫຍຸ້ງກ່ຽວ.
No one wants to live (in it).	bōo míi phǎj jâak jūu.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜຢາກຢູ່.
No one wants to use this room.	bōo míi phǎj jâak sàj hōwṅ nìi.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜຢາກໃຊ້ຫ້ອງນີ້.

M-2

Impolite	bōw sù-phàap	ບໍ່ສຸພາບ
Stingy person	khón khīi-thīi	ຄົນຂີ້ຖີ່
Not so important	bōw sǎm-khán paan-daj	ບໍ່ສໍາຄັນ ປາ ໃດ
Small	nòwj	ນ້ອຍ
Dangerous	kan-daan	ກັ ດາ

He is very impolite.	láaw bōw sù-phàap lǎaj.	ລາວບໍ່ສຸພາບຫລາຍ.
He is a very stingy person.	láaw pen khón khīi-thīi lǎaj.	ລາວເປັນຄົນຂີ້ຖີ່ຫລາຍ.
This matter is not so important.	lỳaŋ nìi bōw sǎm-khán paan-daj	ເລື່ອງນີ້ບໍ່ສໍາຄັນປານໃດ.
This house is very small.	hýan lǎŋ nìi nòwj lǎaj.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ນ້ອຍຫລາຍ.
This road is very dangerous.	tháaŋ sên nìi kan-daan lǎaj.	ທາງເສັ້ນນີ້ກັດງາມຫລາຍ.

C-1

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. He is impolite, isn't he? | A. láaw bōw sù-phàap, mēɛn bōw? |
| B. Yes, he is very impolite.
No one wants to see his face. | B. mēɛn lèɛw, láaw bōw sù-phàap lǎaj.
phǎj phǎj koo bōw jâak hên nâa láaw. |

C-2

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. Why doesn't anybody want to see his face? | A. pen njǎŋ phǎj phǎj koo cýŋ bōw
jâak hên nâa láaw? |
| B. No one wants to see his face because he is so impolite. | B. phǎj phǎj koo bōw jâak hên nâa láaw
phō-wāa láaw bōw sù-phàap lǎaj. |

Cycle 44

M-1

Prettier than	ηάam kwāa	ງາມກວ່າ
More spacious than	kwàaη kwāa	ກວ້າງກວ່າ
Less space than	khèεp kwāa	ແຄບກວ່າ
Cheaper than	thÿyk kwāa	ຖືກກວ່າ
More expensive than	phéεη kwāa	ແພງກວ່າ
Higher than	sũuη kwāa	ສູງກວ່າ

This house is prettier than that one.	hýan lǎη ñìi ηάam kwāa lǎη ñàn.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ງາມກວ່າຫລັງນັ້ນ.
This house is more spacious than that one.	hýan lǎη ñìi kwàaη kwāa lǎη ñàn.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ກວ້າງກວ່າຫລັງນັ້ນ.
This house has less space than that one.	hýan lǎη ñìi khèεp kwāa lǎη ñàn.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ແຄບກວ່າຫລັງນັ້ນ.
This house is less cheaper than that one.	hýan lǎη ñìi thÿyk kwāa lǎη ñàn.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ຖືກກວ່າຫລັງນັ້ນ.
This house is more expensive than that one.	hýan lǎη ñìi phéεη kwāa lǎη ñàn.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ແພງກວ່າຫລັງນັ້ນ.
This house is higher than that one.	hýan lǎη ñìi sũuη kwāa lǎη ñàn.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້ສູງກວ່າຫລັງນັ້ນ.

M-2

Run fast	lēen wáj	ແລ່ ໄວ
Price	lása-kháa	ລາຄາ
As big as	njāj thōo	ໃຫຍ່ທ່ຳ
As new as	māj thāw	ໃໝ່ເທົ່າ

This car runs as fast as that one.	lōt khán nìi lēen wáj thāw kan káp khán nà.	ລົດຄັນນີ້ ແລ່ນໄວເທົ່າກັນກັບຄັນນັ້ນ.
This car has same price as that one.	lōt khán nìi lása-kháa thāw kan káp khán nà.	ລົດຄັນນີ້ ລາຄາເທົ່າກັນກັບຄັນນັ້ນ.
This car is as big as that one.	lōt khán nìi njāj thōo kan káp khán nà.	ລົດຄັນນີ້ ໃຫຍ່ທ່ຳກັ ກັບຄັນນັ້ນ.
This car is as new as that one.	lōt khán nìi māj thāw kan káp khán nà.	ລົດຄັນນີ້ ໃໝ່ເທົ່າກັນກັບຄັນນັ້ນ.

C-1

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. This house is bigger than that one isn't it ? | A. h́yan lǎᅇ nìi njāj kwāa lǎᅇ nà mēen bōo? |
| B. No, this house is as (big) as that one. | B. bōo mēen, h́yan lǎᅇ nìi njāj thōo kan káp lǎᅇ nà. |

C-2

- | | |
|---|--|
| A. This car runs as fast as that one, doesn't it? | A. lōt khán nìi lēen wáj thāw kan káp khán nà, mēen bōo? |
| B. No, this one runs faster than that one. | B. bōo mēen, lōt khán nìi lēen wáj kwāa khán nà. |

NOTES

- 1) Two things may be equal or unequal as far as some quality (goodness, etc.) is concerned consequently, there are in language, constructions that may be labeled 'Comparison of Equality' and 'Comparison of Inequality'.

(a) The Comparison of Inequality construction in Lao is.

NP ¹	+	Vs	+	k̄waa	+	NP ²
<u>h́yan</u>				<u>ḡám</u>		<u>lǎḡ</u>
<u>nìi</u>				<u>kwāa</u>		<u>nàn</u>
(This house		pretty		more		that one)

'This house is prettier than that one.'

(b) The Comparison of Equality construction is:

NP ¹	+	Vs	+	thāw kan káp	+	NP ²
<u>lōt</u>				<u>kāw</u>		<u>khán</u>
<u>khán</u>				<u>thāw kan káp</u>		<u>nàn</u>
<u>nìi</u>		old		equal to		that one.)

'This car is as old as that one.'

When the stative verb refers to 'size', thōo may replace thāw in construction like the one above:

lōt khán nìi njāj thōo kan káp khán nàn 'This car is as big as that one.'

The stative verb may be replaced by V + adverb [lēen wáj] in either of the constructions above:

lōt khán nìi lēen wáj kwāa khán nàn. 'This car runs faster than that one.'

lōt khán nìi lēen wáj thāw kan káp khán nàn. 'This car runs as fast as that one.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw _____ cằw bằw?
(Is she taller than you?)
- (b) hýan cằw _____ hýan láaw
(Your house is as pretty as his.)
- (c) láaw njāaη _____ cằw
(He walks faster than you do.)
- (d) lỳaη nìi _____ lỳaη nàn
(This story is more interesting than that one.)
- (e) láaw pen khón _____ cằw
(He's as intelligent a person as you are.)
- (f) láaw kháp lôt _____ phýan cằw
(He drives faster than your friend.)
- (g) phǎj phǎj kỏỏ bỏỏ _____ láaw
(Nobody is as evil (bad as he is).)
- (h) pỳm hủa nìi _____ hủa nàn
(This book is as cheap as that one.)
- (i) mầak-mầaη nầaj nìi _____ nầaj nàn
(This mango is as big as that one.)
- (j) mớoη nầaj nìi _____ nầaj nàn
(This watch is more expensive than that one.)
- (k) hầa-síp làn kíp _____
(50,000,000 kip. That's very expensive.)
- (l) mỳy nìi láaw khắaj _____ mỳy wáan nìi
(He is selling it cheaper today than yesterday.)
- (m) _____ nàn
(It's much more delicious than that.)

Answers: 1 (a) sủuη kwāa, (b) náam thāw kan káp, (c) wáj kwāa,
(d) nầa sỏn-caj kwāa, (e) sá-lầat thāw kan káp, (f) wáj kwāa,
(g) sầa thỏỏ, (h) thỳyk thāw kan káp, (i) njầj thỏỏ kan káp,
(j) phéεη kwāa, (k) phéεη lắaj, (l) thỳyk kwāa,
(m) mán sèεp lắaj kwāa

Cycle 45

M-1

Performer	nāk-sá-dεεη	ັກສະແດງ
The prettiest	ຖ່າam kwāa mūu	ງາມກວ່າຫມູ່
The loveliest	nāa-hāk kwāa mūu	ຫ້າຮັກກວ່າຫມູ່
The ugliest	khīi-hàaj kwāa mūu	ຂີ້ຮ້າຍກວ່າຫມູ່
The best-mannered	hìap-hòoj kwāa mūu	ຮຽບຮ້ອຍກວ່າຫມູ່
The most bashful	khīi-aaj kwāa mūu	ຂີ້ອາຍກວ່າຫມູ່

Which of these three performers do you think is the prettiest?	náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa nāk-sá-dεεη phūu daj ຖ່າam kwāa mūu?	ໃນສາມຄົນນີ້ ເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າ ັກສະແດງຜູ້ໃດ ງາມກວ່າຫມູ່?
Which of these three performers do you think is loveliest?	náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa nāk-sá-dεεη phūu daj nāa-hāk kwāa mūu?	ໃ ສາມຄົນນີ້ ເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າ ັກສະແດງຜູ້ໃດ ຫ້າຮັກ ກວ່າຫມູ່?
Which of these three performers do you think is the ugliest?	náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa nāk-sá-dεεη phūu daj khīi-hàaj kwāa mūu?	ໃນສາມຄົນນີ້ ເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າ ັກສະແດງຜູ້ໃດ ຂີ້ຮ້າຍກວ່າຫມູ່?
Which of these three performers do you think is the best mannered?	náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa nāk-sá-dεεη phūu daj hìap-hòoj kwāa mūu?	ໃນສາມຄົນນີ້ ເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າ ັກສະແດງຜູ້ໃດ ຮຽບຮ້ອຍກວ່າຫມູ່?
Which of these three performers do you think is the most bashful?	náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa nāk-sá-dεεη phūu daj khīi-aaj kwāa mūu?	ໃນສາມຄົນນີ້ ເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າ ັກສະແດງຜູ້ໃດ ຂີ້ອາຍກວ່າຫມູ່?

M-2

Equally pretty	ຖ້າam thāw kan	ງາມເທົ່າກັນ
Equally skilful	kəŋ thāw kan	ເກັ່ງເທົ່າກັນ
Equally nice	dii thāw kan	ດີເທົ່າກັນ
To be educated	dàj-hāp kaan sýk-sǎa	ໄດ້ຮັບກາ ສຶກສາ
The same age	míi aa-njū thāw kan	ມີອາຍຸເທົ່າກັນ
Have a lot of work	míi wíak lǎaj	ມີວຽກຫລາຍ
Have salary	míi ŋén-dyan	ມີເງິ ເດືອ

These three performers are equally pretty.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ງາມເທົ່າກັນ.
	ຖ້າam thāw kan.	
These three performers are equally skilful.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ເກັ່ງເທົ່າກັນ.
	kəŋ thāw kan.	
These three performers are equally nice.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ດີເທົ່າກັນ.
	dii thāw kan.	
These three performers are equally educated.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ໄດ້ຮັບກາ ສຶກສາ
	dàj-hāp kaan sýk-sǎa thāw kan	ເທົ່າກັນ.
These three performers are the same age.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ມີອາຍຸເທົ່າກັນ.
	míi aa-njū thāw kan.	
These three performers have equal large amount of work.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ມີວຽກຫລາຍເທົ່າກັນ.
	míi wíak lǎaj thāw kan	
These three performers have equal salaries.	nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi	ນັກສະແດງສາມຄົນນີ້ ມີເງິນເດືອນເທົ່າກັນ.
	míi ŋén-dyan thāw kan.	

C-1

- A. Of these three performers who do you think is the prettiest ?
- B. I think these three performers are equally pretty.

- A. náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ phūu daj ŋám kwāa mūu?
- B. khôj khīt wāa nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ sǎam khón nìi ŋáam thāw kan.

C-2

- A. Of these three performers there's one who is the prettiest, don't you think?
- B. No, I think they are equally pretty.

- A. náj sǎam khón nàn míi nāk-sá-dɛɛŋ phūu nŷŋ ŋáam kwāa mūu, mēen bōw?
- B. bōw mēen, khôj khīt wāa khá-càw ŋáam thāw kan.

NOTES

1) The construction for Comparison of Inequality when more than two objects are being compared is:

NP (Number of Objects) + NP (Subjects) + Vs kwāa + mūu

náj sǎam khón nìi nāk-sá-dεεη phūu daj njám kwāa mūu

(of these 3 persons which performers pretty more group)

'Which of these three performers is the prettiest?'

mūu 'group' always occurs in this construction. The classifier phūu is used before daj because it is the classifier for nāk-sá-dεεη. Observe the following construction with a different classifier:

náj sǎam nūaj nìi mâak-kùaj nūaj daj sèεp kwāa mūu

'Which of these three bananas is the most delicious?'

2. The construction of Comparison of Equality when three or more objects are being compared is:

NP (Subject) + Vs + thāw kan

njín sǎam khón nìi sūuη thāw kan

'These three women are equally tall.'

thāw kan 'equal, equally' may also occur after NP:

njín sǎam khón nìi míi aa-njū thāw kan

(These three women have age equal)

'These three women are the same age.'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

- (a) náj sīi khón nìi dék-nòoj phūu-daj nāa-hāk _____
(Which of the four children is the most loveable?)
- (b) náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāa phūu-njín phūu-daj _____
(Which of these three women do you think is the most bashful?)
- (c) pým hók hūa nìi _____
(These six books are equally priced..)
- (d) dék-nòoj hāa khón nìi míi nén _____
(These five boys have equal amounts of money.)
- (e) sāaṅ màj sǒṅ khón nìi hēt wìak _____
(These two carpenters work equally skillfully.)
- (f) náj sǎam khón nìi thā-hǎan phūu-daj kháp lōt _____
(Which of these three soldiers drives the fastest?)
- (g) náj sǎam khón nìi nāk-hían phūu-daj _____
(Which of these three students is the most studious?)
- (h) náj sǎam too nìi kāj too daj _____
(Which is the biggest of these three chickens?)
- (i) kèew sǎam nūaj nàn míi _____.
(Those three bottles have equal amounts of water in them.)
- (j) náj sǎam khón nàn náaj-sāaṅ phūu-daj pīan jaṅ dàj _____
(Of those three artisans, which can change a tire the fastest?)

Answers: 1 (a) kwāa mūu, **(b)** khīi-aaj kwāa mūu, **(c)** lāa-kháa thāw kan,
(d) thāw kan, **(e)** kēṅ thāw kan, **(f)** wáj kwāa mūu,
(g) dú-mān kwāa mūu, **(h)** njāj kwāa mūu, **(i)** nām thāw kan,
(j) wáj kwāa mūu

Cycle 46

M-1

Book, (classifier)	pỳm, hũa	ປ້ມ, ຫົວ
Money, kip	ງອ່ນ, kíp	ເງິ , ກີບ
Rice, bag	khâw, thỏງ	ເຂົ້າ, ຖົງ
Fish, (classifier)	paa, too	ປາ, ໂຕ
Bullet, (classifier)	lùuk-pyyn, lùuk	ລູກປີ້ , ລູກ
Hand grenade, (classifier)	lā-bêot-mýy, lùuk	ລະເບີດມື້, ລູກ
Beer, bottle	lâw bia, kèew	ເຫລົ້າເບຍ, ແກ້ວ
Sign, slogan,	pàaj, khám-khũan	ປ້າຍ, ຄຳຂວັ
Sheet (classifier)	phēen	ແຜ່ , ແຜ່ນ

Now I have two books left.	diaw-nìi khỏj njáງ lỷa pỳm jũu sỏong hũa.	ດຽວນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫລືອປ້ມຢູ່ ສອງຫົວ.
Now I have two million kips left.	diaw-nìi khỏj njáງ lỷa ງອ່ນ jũu sỏong làn kíp.	ດຽວນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫລືອເງິ ຢູ່ ສອງລ້າ ກີບ.
Now I have two bags of rice left.	diaw-nìi khỏj njáງ lỷa khâw jũu sỏong thỏງ.	ດຽວນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫລືອເຂົ້າຢູ່ ສອງຖົງ.
Now I have two fish left.	diaw-nìi khỏj njáງ lỷa paa jũu sỏong too.	ດຽວນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫລືອປາຢູ່ ສອງໂຕ.
Now I have two bottles of beer left.	diaw-nìi khỏj njáງ lỷa lâw bia jũu sỏong kèew.	ດຽວນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫລືອເຫລົ້າເບຍຢູ່ ສອງແກ້ວ.
Now I have two slogan signs left.	diaw-nìi khỏj njáງ lỷa pàaj khám-khũan jũu sỏong phēen.	ດຽວນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫລືອປ້າຍຄຳຂວັ ຢູ່ ສອງແຜ່ .

M-2

Money, dollar	ηón, dooláa	ເງິ , ໂດລາ
Sack, (classifier)	thǒŋ, nūaj	ຖົງ, (ຫ ' ວຍ)
Banana, (classifier)	mâak-kùaj, nūaj	ຫມາກກ້ວຍ, (ຫ ' ວຍ)
Article, story	bót-khwáam, lỳaŋ	ບົດຄວາມ, ເລື້ອງ
Member, person	sá-máa-sīk, khón	ສະມາຊິກ, ຄົ
People, family	khón, khòɔp-khúa	ຄົ , ຄອບຄົວ
Towel (classifier)	phâa-sēt-nâa, phǎyn	ຜ້າເຊັດຫ້າ, (ຜີ)
Brush, brush teeth (classifier)	pɛɛŋ, thũu khêɛw, an	ແປງ, ກູເຂັ້ວ, ອັ

How many dollars do you have left?	càw nján lǎ ηón jũu cák dooláa?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອເງິ ຢູ່ຈັກໂດລາ?
How many sacks do you have left?	càw nján lǎ thǒŋ jũu cák nūaj?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອຖົງຢູ່ຈັກຫ ' ວຍ?
How many bananas do you have left?	càw nján lǎ mâak-kùaj jũu cák nūaj?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອຫມາກກ້ວຍຢູ່ ຈັກຫ ' ວຍ?
How many articles (a written) do you have left?	càw nján lǎ bót-khwáam jũu cák lỳaŋ?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອບົດຄວາມຢູ່ ຈັກເລື້ອງ?
How many members do you have left?	càw nján lǎ sá-máa-sīk jũu cák khón?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອສະມາຊິກຢູ່ ຈັກຄົ ?
How many towels do you have left?	càw nján lǎ phâa-sēt-nâa jũu cák phǎyn?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອຜ້າເຊັດຫ້າຢູ່ ຈັກຜີ ?
How many tooth brushes do you have left?	càw nján lǎ pɛɛŋ-thũu- khêɛw jũu cák an?	ເຈົ້າຍັງເຫລືອແປງກູເຂັ້ວຢູ່ ຈັກອັ ?

C-1

- A. Now they have two sacks of rice left, isn't that right ?
- B. Yes, that's right, now they have two sacks (of rice) left.

- A. diaw-nìi khá-càw nján lǎ khâw jūu sǒŋ thǒŋ, mēen bōō?
- B. mēen lèew, diaw-nìi khá-càw nján lǎ jūu sǒŋ thǒŋ.

C-2

- A. How many bananas do you have left ?
- B. I have five bananas left.

- A. càw nján lǎ mâak-kùaj jūu cák nūaj?
- B. khôj nján lǎ mâak-kùaj jūu hâa nūaj.

C-3

- A. Of what objects of cloth do you have two left ?
- B. I have two towels left.

- A. càw nján lǎ njǎn jūu sǒŋ phǎyn?
- B. khôj nján lǎ phâa-sēt-nâa jūu sǒŋ phǎyn?

NO APPLICATION

Cycle 47

M-1

Rice	khâw	ເຂົ້າ
Pepper	mâak-phét	ຫມາກເຜັດ
Fish sauce	nàm-paa	ນ້ຳປາ
Salt	kya	ເກືອ
Sugar	nàm-taan	ຮ້າຕາ
Black pepper	phīk-tháj	ພິກໄທ
Bread	khâw-cīi	ເຂົ້າຈີ່
Meat	sìin	ຊີ້ນ

Our rice is all gone.	khâw háw mót lèɛw.	ເຂົ້າເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our (green, red) pepper is all gone.	mâak-phét háw mót lèɛw.	ຫມາກເຜັດເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our fish sauce is all gone.	nàm-paa háw mót lèɛw.	ນ້ຳປາເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our salt is all gone.	kya háw mót lèɛw.	ເກືອເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our sugar is all gone.	nàm-taan háw mót lèɛw.	ຮ້າຕາ ເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our black pepper is all gone.	phīk-tháj háw mót lèɛw.	ພິກໄທເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our bread is all gone.	khâw-cīi háw mót lèɛw.	ເຂົ້າຈີ່ເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our meat is all gone.	sìin háw mót lèɛw.	ຊີ້ນເຮົາຫມົດແລ້ວ.

M-2

Rice	khâw	ເຂົ້າ
Butter	nàm-mán-bəə	ນ້ຳມັນ ເບີ
Lard	nàm-mán-mŭu	ນ້ຳມັນ ຫມູ
Salad dressing	nàm-mán-sá-lát	ນ້ຳມັນ ສະຫລັດ
Onion	phák-būa	ຜັກບົ່ວ
Garlic	phák-thíam	ຜັກທຽມ
Cucumbers	mâak-tɛɛŋ	ຫມາກແຕງ
Beans	mâak-thūa	ຫມາກຖົ່ວ

Our rice is almost gone.	khâw háw kàj si mót lèɛw	ເຂົ້າເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our butter is almost gone.	nàm-mán-bəə háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ນ້ຳມັນ ເບີເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our lard is almost gone.	nàm-mán-mŭu háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ນ້ຳມັນ ຫມູເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our salad dressing is almost gone.	nàm-mán-sá-lát háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ນ້ຳມັນ ສະຫລັດເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our onions are almost gone.	phák-būa háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ຜັກບົ່ວເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our garlic is almost gone.	phák-thíam háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ຜັກທຽມເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our cucumbers are almost gone	mâak-tɛɛŋ háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ຫມາກແຕງເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.
Our beans are almost gone.	mâak-thūa háw kàj si mót lèɛw.	ຫມາກຖົ່ວເຮົາໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວ.

M-3

Fish sauce	nàm-paa	ນ້ຳປາ
Salt	kya	ເກືອ
Black pepper	phīk-tháj	ພິກໄທ
Onions	phák-būa	ຜັກບົວ
Bread	khâw-cīi	ເຂົ້າຈີ່
Beef	sìn-ຖຸ່າ	ຊີ້ນງົວ
Fruit	mâak-màj	ຫມາກໄມ້

We still have fish sauce.	nàm-paa háw nján jūu.	ນ້ຳປາເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.
We still have salt.	kya hàw nján jūu.	ເກືອເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.
We still have black pepper.	phīk-tháj háw nján jūu.	ພິກໄທເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.
We still have onions.	phák-būa háw nján jūu.	ຜັກບົວເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.
We still have bread.	khâw-cīi háw nján jūu.	ເຂົ້າຈີ່ເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.
We still have beef.	sìn-ຖຸ່າ háw nján jūu.	ຊີ້ນງົວເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.
We still have fruit.	mâak-màj háw nján jūu.	ຫມາກໄມ້ເຮົາຍັງຢູ່.

C-1

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A. Are we out of pepper? | A. màak-phét háw mót lèew bɔɔ? |
| B. Yes, we are out of it. | B. əə, mót lèew. |

C-2

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. Are we nearly out of salad dressing ? | A. nàm-mán-sá-lát háw kàj si mót lèew bɔɔ? |
| B. Yes, we are almost out of it. | B. əə, kàj si mót lèew. |

C-3

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. Are we out of pepper? | A. mâak-phét háw mót lèew bɔɔ? |
| B. No, we still have some. | B. bɔɔ, mâak-phét háw nján jūu. |

ຖາມຫາຂອງຕ່າງໆ ທີ່ນັກຮຽນແຕ່ລະຄົນມີ ເບິ່ງດູ! ເຂົາຍັງມີຢູ່ ຫລື ໃຊ້ຫມົດແລ້ວ? ຍັງບໍ່ຫມົດ. ຍັງເຫລືອຢູ່ບໍ່ ຫລື ຫມົດແລ້ວ. ໃກ້ຊິຫມົດແລ້ວບໍ່ ຫລືວ່າ ຍັງຫລາຍຢູ່?

NOTES

- 1) mót means 'to be used up'. It is used to indicate that the supply of something is exhausted:
nàm-paa mó t lèεw 'The fish sauce is all gone.'

When kàj si precedes mót, it indicates that the supply is nearly used up.

The manner in which something was consumed can be indicated by putting a verb before mót: kin mó t 'eaten up', etc.

- 2) lǎa is used to indicate that something remains from an amount that was originally set-aside for some special purpose.

Observe the use of lǎa in sentences:

khôj nján lǎa pým jūu sǒŋ hǔa 'I have two books left.'
(to me still remains book 2) (of the ones I brought back from Germany.)

The classifier phrase indicating the amount is not immediately next to its NP but follows jūu.

- 3) nján... jūu is used to indicate that a certain situation still continues to exist. It may be used without lǎa but with some difference in meaning. Compare:

mâak-kùaj háw nján jūu 'We still have bananas.'
(There's no need to buy any more).

mâak-kùaj háw nján lǎa jūu 'We still have bananas (left over from making a banana cake).'

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks:

- (a) càw njáŋ _____ sá-máa-sīk _____ cák khón?
(How many members do you have left?)
- (b) nám-mán-bəə háw _____ mót lèew
(Our butter is almost gone.)
- (c) _____ háw mót lèew
(Our garlic is all gone.)
- (d) kya háw _____
(We still have salt.)
- (e) mâak-phét háw mót lèew _____?
(Are we out of pepper?)
- (f) _____ háw njáŋ jūu
(We still have beef.)
- (g) ee, _____
(We're out of it.)
- (h) khôj njáŋ lýa paa jūu _____
(I have two fish left.)
- (i) há-càw _____ aa-hăan _____ lèew
(They ate up the food.)
- (j) diaw-nìi khôj njáŋ lýa _____ jūu _____
(Now I have two kips left.)
- (k) _____ lèew!
(Time's up!)
- (l) càw njáŋ lýa _____ jūu cák _____?
(How many bananas do you have left?)

Answers: (a) lýa...jūu (b) kàj si (c) phák-thíam (d) njáŋ jūu (e) boo
(f) sìin-ŋúa (g) mót lèew (h) sǒoŋ too (i) kin...mót (j) ŋén...sǒoŋ kīip
(k) mót wée-láa (l) mâak-kùa...nūaj.

Cycle 48

M-1

Money	ງອນ	ເງິ
Idea, thought	khwáam khīt	ຄວາມຄິດ
Will power, encouragement	kam-láṅ-caj	ກຳລັງໃຈ
Worry, concern	khwáam pen-hūaṅ	ຄວາມເປັ ຫ່ວງ
Punishment, penalty	thòot	ໂທດ
Time	wée-láa	ເວລາ
Contract, agreement	sǎn-njáa	ສັ ຍາ
Hope	wǎṅ	ຫວັງ

They are already broke.	khá-càw mót ṅón lèɛw.	ຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດເງິ ເລ້ວ.
They are already out of idea.	khá-càw mót khwáam khīt lèɛw.	ຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດຄວາມຄິດເລ້ວ.
They are already discouraged.	khá-càw mót kam-láṅ-caj lèɛw.	ຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດກຳລັງໃຈເລ້ວ.
They are already free of concern.	khá-càw mót khwáam pen-hūaṅ lèɛw.	ຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດຄວາມ ເປັ ຫ່ວງເລ້ວ.
Their time is up already.	wée-láa khá-càw mót lèɛw.	ເວລາຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດເລ້ວ.
Their contract is already over.	sǎn-njáa khá-càw mót lèɛw.	ສັນຍາຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດເລ້ວ.
They have no more hope.	khá-càw mót wǎṅ lèɛw.	ຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດຫວັງເລ້ວ.

M-2

Patience	khwáam ót-thón	ຄວາມອົດທົ
Question	khám-thăam	ຄຳຖາມ
Problem	pan-hăa	ບັ ຫາ
Relations, one another	khwáam sǎm-phán, kan	ຄວາມສຳພັນ , ກັນ
Dislike	kíat-sán	ກຽດຊ້າງ
Love one another	hāk-phéeng kan	ຮັກເພງກັນ

They still have patience.	khá-càw nján míi khwáam ót-thón jūu.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງມີຄວາມອົດທົ ຢູ່.
They still have questions.	khá-càw nján míi khám-thăam jūu.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງມີຄຳຖາມຢູ່.
They still have problems.	khá-càw nján míi pan-hăa jūu.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງມີບັ ຫາຢູ່.
They still have relations with one another.	khá-càw nján míi khwáam sǎm-phán kan jūu.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງມີຄວາມສຳພັນ ກັນ ຢູ່.
They still dislike one another.	khá-càw nján kíat-sán kan jūu.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງກຽດຊ້າງກັນ ຢູ່.
They still love one another.	khá-càw nján hāk-phéeng kan jūu.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງຮັກເພງກັນ ຢູ່.

C-1

- A. Are you broke?
- B. Yes, I'm broke.

- A. càw mót ɲén lèew bɔɔ?
- B. ɛɛ, khôj mót ɲén lèew.

C-2

- A. Are they still of a mind (to...)?
- B. Yes, they are.

- A. khá-càw ɲjáj míi kam-láj-caj jūu bɔɔ?
- B. ɛɛ, khá-càw ɲjáj míi kam-láj-caj jūu.

C-3

- A. Are you already free of concern?
- B. No, I am still {concerned
{worried

- A. càw mót khwáam pen-hūaɲ lèew bɔɔ?
- B. bɔɔ, khôj ɲjáj míi khwáam pen-hūaɲ jūu.

NO APPLICATION

Cycle 49

M-1

Live, dwell	aa-sǎj jūu	ອາໄສຢູ່
House	hýan	ເຮືອ
To be in the military	pen thā-hǎan	ເປັນທະຫານ
To be out of work	wāaŋ ŋáan	ຫວ່າງງານ
To be tied up with work	kháa wìak	ຄາວຽກ
To be indebted (to)	pen níi	ເປັນໜີ້
Go out	ôok paj	ອອກໄປ
Carry out a mission or duty	pá-tí-bát ŋáan	ປະຕິບັດງານ
To be locked up	thýyk khǎŋ	ຖືກຂັງ
To lose one's way	lǒŋ tháaŋ	ຫລົງທາງ

Is she still living in your house?	láaw njáŋ aa-sǎj jūu hýan cǎw jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງອາໄສຢູ່ເຮືອເຈົ້າ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still in the service?	láaw njáŋ pen thā-hǎan jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງເປັນທະຫານ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still out of work?	láaw njáŋ wāaŋ ŋáan jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງຫວ່າງງານ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still tied up with his work?	láaw njáŋ kháa wìak jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງຄາວຽກ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still indebted to you?	láaw njáŋ pen níi cǎw jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງເປັນໜີ້ເຈົ້າ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still going out on the mission?	láaw njáŋ ôok paj pá-tí-bát ŋáan jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງອອກໄປປະຕິບັດງານ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still locked up?	láaw njáŋ thýyk khǎŋ jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງຖືກຂັງ ຢູ່ບໍ?
Is he still lost?	láaw njáŋ lǒŋ tháaŋ jūu boo?	ລາວຍັງຫລົງທາງ ຢູ່ບໍ?

M-2

Leave the military service	ôok thā-hǎan	ອອກທະຫາ
To have work to do	míi wìak hēt	ມີວຽກເຮັດ
To be free of work	wǎaŋ wìak	ຫວ່າງວຽກ
Pay off one's debt	sàj nīi mót	ໃຊ້ໜີ້ຫມົດ
To be released, to be let go	thýyk pōoj	ຖືກປ່ອຍ
Go away, escape from	nīi cáak	ຫີຈາກ
Stop	sáw	ເຊົາ, ຢຸດ

He left the service a long time ago.	láaw ôok thā-hǎan tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວອອກທະຫາ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.
He got a job a long time ago.	láaw míi wìak hēt tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວມີວຽກເຮັດ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.
He has had spare time for a long time.	láaw wǎaŋ wìak tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວຫວ່າງວຽກ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.
He paid off his debts a long time ago.	láaw sàj-nīi mót tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວໃຊ້ໜີ້ຫມົດ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.
He was released a long time ago.	láaw thýyk pōoj tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວຖືກປ່ອຍ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.
He left me a long time ago.	láaw nīi cáak khôj tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວຫີຈາກຂ້ອຍ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.
He stopped going out on the mission a long time ago	láaw sáw ôok paj pá-tí-bát ŋáan tēɛ don lèɛw.	ລາວເຊົາອອກໄປປະຕິບັດງາ ແຕ່ດີ ແລ້ວ.

C-1

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. Is he still living in you house? | A. láaw nján̄ aa-sǎj jūu h́yan càw jūu bōō? |
| B. Yes, he is still living in my house. | B. láaw nján̄ aa-sǎj jūu h́yan khôj jūu. |

C-2

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. Has he already left the service? | A. láaw ôok thā-hǎan lèew bōō? |
| B. Yes, he left the service a long time ago. | B. ee, láaw ôok thā-hǎan tēe don lèew. |

C-3

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| A. Is he still tied up with the work? | A. láaw nján̄ kháa wìak jūu bōō? |
| B. No, he was free (of work) a long time ago | B. bōō, láaw wǎn̄ wìak tēe don lèew. |

NO APPLICATION

Cycle 50

M-1

Run; good, well	lēen, dii	ແລ່ , ດີ
Have; condition, state	míi, sá-phàap	ມີ, ສະພາບ
Detain; to be detained	kák, thýyk kák	ກັກ, ຖືກກັກ
Break down	phée	ເພ
Rubber, tire	jaan, tǐin lōt	ຢາງ, ຕີນລົດ
Fix, repair	pεεn	ແປງ
Buy, buyer	sýy, phūu sýy	ຊື້, ຜູ້ຊື້
Still?	jūu bōō?	ຢູ່ບໍ່?

Is his car still running well?	lōt láaw nján lēen dii jūu bōō ?	ລົດລາວຍັງແລ່ ດີ ຢູ່ບໍ່?
Is his car still in good condition?	lōt láaw nján míi sá-phàap dii jūu bōō?	ລົດລາວຍັງມີສະພາບດີ ຢູ່ບໍ່?
Is his car still broken down?	lōt láaw nján phée jūu bōō?	ລົດລາວຍັງເພ ຢູ່ບໍ່?
Is his car still without tires?	lōt láaw nján bōō míi jaan jūu bōō?	ລົດລາວຍັງບໍ່ມີຕີນລົດ ຢູ່ບໍ່?
Is his car still being fixed?	lōt láaw nján pεεn jūu bōō?	ລົດລາວຍັງແປງ ຢູ່ບໍ່?
Is he still unable to find a buyer for his car?	lōt láaw nján bōō míi phūu sýy jūu bōō?	ລົດລາວຍັງບໍ່ມີຜູ້ຊື້ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

M-2

Die	taaaj	ຕາຍ
Old; much, many, very	kāw, lǎaj	ເກົ່າ; ຫລາຍ
Repair, fix; complete	pɛɛŋ, lɛ̀ɛw	ແປງ; ແລ້ວ
Run, able to run	lɛ̀ɛn, lɛ̀ɛn dǎj	ແລ່ , ແລ່ ໄດ້
Sell	khǎaj	ຂາຍ
Steal, they	lāk, khǎw	ລັກ, ເຂົາ
Fire, catch fire	fáj, fáj māj	ໄຟ, ໄຟໄຫມ້
Gain back, get back	dàj khýyn	ໄດ້ຄື

His car is already broken down.	lōt láaw taaaj lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວເພແລ້ວ.
His car is already very old.	lōt láaw kāw lǎaj lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວເກົ່າຫລາຍແລ້ວ.
His car has already been fixed.	lōt láaw pɛɛŋ lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວແປງແລ້ວໆ.
His car is already running.	lōt láaw lɛ̀ɛn dǎj lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວແລ່ ໄດ້ແລ້ວ.
His car has already been sold.	lōt láaw khǎaj lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວຂາຍແລ້ວ.
His car has already been stolen.	lōt láaw thýyk khǎw lāk lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວຖືກເຂົາລັກແລ້ວ.
His car was already burned up.	lōt láaw thýyk fáj māj lɛ̀ɛw.	ລົດລາວຖືກໄຟໄຫມ້ແລ້ວ.
He's already gotten his car back.	láaw dǎj lōt láaw khýyn lɛ̀ɛw.	ລາວໄດ້ລົດລາວຄື ແລ້ວ.

C-1

- A. Is your car still running well? A. lōt càw njáṅ lēen dii jūu bōō?
- B. Yes, my car is still running well. B. càw, lōt khōj njáṅ lēen dii jūu.

C-2

- A. His car has already been stolen, A. lōt láaw thýyk khǎw lāk lèew,
isn't that right? mēen bōō?
- B. That's right, his car has B. càw, lōt láaw thýyk khǎw
already been stolen. lāk lèew.

C-3

- A. Is his car still running well? A. lōt láaw njáṅ lēen dii jūu bōō?
- B. No, his car is broken down. B. bōō, lōt láaw phée lèew.

"ຍັງບໍ່ໄປ" "ຍັງມີເງິນ" "ຍັງເຫລືອ" "ສິບໂມງຍັງຫ້າ າທີ", ລອງພາກັນ ຂະຫຍາຍກາ ໃຊ້ ຄຳວ່າ "ຍັງ" ອອກໃຫ້ກວ້າງເບິ່ງດູ!
ພ້ອມກັນນີ້ ກໍຈົ່ງຊີ້ແຈງໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈ ແຕ່ລະສະພາບກາ .

NOTES
(for Cycles 48, 49, 50)

1) When mót is used with abstract Nouns like kam-lán-caj 'will, spirit', it refers to an absence or lack of something. mót kam-lán-caj 'to be discouraged', mót wǎṅ 'to have no hope', mót thòot 'to be no longer under punishment'.

2) khwáam is a nominalizer, i. e. when it is placed before VP, the VP is changed into NP;

<u>khwáam</u>	+	VP	=	NP
<u>khwáam</u>		<u>pen hūaṅ</u>		<u>khwáam pen-hūaṅ</u>
		'to be concerned'		'worry, concern'

The nouns formed in this manner are all Abstract Nouns.

3) míi kam-lán-caj jūu means 'to still have one's mind on (doing something) or 'not to have given up the idea of (doing something)'.

láaw njáṅ míi kam-lán-caj pen sáaw-náa jūu

'He hasn't given up the idea of being a farmer yet.'

4) kan after VP indicates 'mutuality' or 'reciprocity' in an action; it functions somewhat like a reflexive pronoun (myself, himself, etc.) in English:

khá-càw njáṅ kiat-sáṅ kan jūu 'They still dislike each other.'

5) When thýyk occurs before certain VP, it functions somewhat like be in the passive in English:

láaw nján thýyk khǎn jūu 'He is still locked up.'

lōt láaw thýyk khǎw lāk lèew 'His car has already been stolen'

thýyk usually occurs before verbs, such as khǎn 'to lock up', fáj-mâj 'fire burn up', sóm-sóej "to praise", etc. Most verbs such as khǎaj, etc. may occur with either 'active' or 'passive' meaning, thus khǎaj 'to sell' or 'to be sold', etc.

- 6) tēē don lèew (lit. 'since a long time already') 'a long time ago' is used to indicate that situation has been in effect for some time.

láaw ôok thā-hǎan tēē don lèew 'He left the military service a long time ago'.

- 7) hēt-wiak means 'to do any kind of work.' míi-wiak hēt means 'to have work to do, to have a job.' wǎan-wiak means 'to be free of work'. It has nothing to do with employment. kháa-wiak means 'to be tied up in, or very much involved in your job or work.' wǎan-ḡáan means 'to be out of a job, unemployed'.
- 8) nîi means 'debt'. pen-nîi Person means 'to be indebted to a person'. sàj nîi means 'to pay off debts'.

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) láaw _____ khwáam ót-thón.
(He's out of patience.)
- (b) mót _____ lèew
(The contract has already expired.)
- (c) nján lýa _____ jūu _____ khôo
(Two questions still remain.)
- (d) càw pen _____ bôo ?
(Are you concerned, worried?)

Answers: 1(a) mót (b) sǎn-njáa (c) khám-thǎam (d) hūan

- (e) pá-thèet ciin nján míi _____ káp pá-thèet phā-màa jūu
(China still has relations with Burma.)
- (f) càw nján míi _____ pen náaj-khúu jūu bōō?
(Haven't you given up the idea of being a teacher yet?)
- (g) khá-càw nján kīat-sán _____ jūu
(They still dislike each other.)
- (h) càw míi _____ bōō?
(Do you have work to do?)
- (i) lōt jūu hân _____ thýyk
(Cars are sold cheap there)
- (j) khōj nján lýa wée-láa jūu _____
(I still have ten minutes left.)
- (k) sýa láaw _____ lèew
(His shirt has already burned.)
- (l) láaw thýyk khǎj _____
(How long was he locked up?)
- (m) phyan càw thýyk pōoj _____
(Your friend was released a long time ago.)
- (n) càw nján _____ láaw jūu cák kīip?
(How many kip do you still owe him?)
- (o) láaw nján _____ jūu hyan khōj
(He's still living at my house.)
- (p) khōj bōō pen nīi càw
(I don't owe you a single kip.)
- (q) khōj _____ mót tēē don lèew
(I paid off my debts a long time ago.)
- (r) lōt láaw pεεη _____
(His car already been fixed.)
- (s) càw _____ thāaj-húup _____ bōō?
(Do you still know how to take pictures?)

Answers: 1(e) khwáam-sǎm-phán (f) kam-lán-caj (g) kan (h) wiak-hēt
(i) khǎaj (j) síp náa-thíi (k) thýyk fáj-mâj
(l) don paan-daj (m) tēē don lèew (n) pen-nīi (o) aa-sǎj
(p) cák kīip (q) sàj-nīi (r) lèew lèew (s) nján... pen jūu

- (t) h́yan láaw _____ lèew bōō?
(Has his house been built yet?)
- (u) pá-tuu njáŋ _____ jūu
(The door is still open.)
- (v) khá-càw njáŋ _____ jūu
(They still love each other.)
- (w) láaw _____ jūu sǎj?
(Where did he get lost?)
- (x) láaw thýyk pōōj lèew phō-wāa [láaw] _____ lèew
(He has been released already because he has already paid his debt to society.)
- (y) khōj bōō dàj wàw njǎŋ phō-wāa _____ lèew
(I didn't say anything because I was already out of ideas.)

Answers: 1(t) púk lèew (u) khǎj (v) hāk-phéew kan (w) lōŋ-tháaŋ
(x) mót-thòot (y) mót khwáam-khīt

Cycle 51

M-1

Red	sǐi dɛɛŋ	ສີ ແດງ
White	sǐi khǎaw	ສີ ຂາວ
Yellow	sǐi lǎŋ	ສີ ເຫລືອງ
Sky	sǐi fàa	ສີ ຟ້າ
Black	sǐi dam	ສີ ດຳ
Green	sǐi khǎaw	ສີ ຊຽວ
Color	sǐi	ສີ

My shirt is red.	sŷa khôj sǐi dɛɛŋ.	ເສື້ອຂ້ອຍສີແດງ.
My shirt is white.	sŷa khôj sǐi khǎaw.	ເສື້ອຂ້ອຍສີຂາວ.
My shirt is yellow.	sŷa khôj sǐi lǎŋ.	ເສື້ອຂ້ອຍສີເຫລືອງ.
My shirt is blue.	sŷa khôj sǐi fàa.	ເສື້ອຂ້ອຍສີຟ້າ.
My shirt is black.	sŷa khôj sǐi dam.	ເສື້ອຂ້ອຍສີດຳ.
My shirt is green.	sŷa khôj sǐi khǎaw.	ເສື້ອຂ້ອຍສີຊຽວ.

M-2

Sugar	sǐi nàm-taan	ສີ ຈໍຕາ
Grey	sǐi tháw	ສີເທົາ
Light green	sǐi khǎaw-ōon	ສີຂຽວອ່ອນ
Dark yellow	sǐi lýaṅ-kēε	ສີເຫລືອງເກ່
Blackish red	sǐi dam-dεεṅ	ສີດໍາແດງ

What color is your shirt, it's brown, isn't it?	sýa càw sǐi njǎṅ, sǐi nàm-taan, ບວວ mēεn ບວວ?	ເສື້ອເຈົ້າສີຫຍັງ, ສີ ຈໍຕາ ບໍ່ແມ່ ບໍ່?
What color is your shirt, it's grey, isn't it?	sýa càw sǐi njǎṅ, sǐi tháw, ບວວ mēεn ບວວ?	ເສື້ອເຈົ້າສີຫຍັງ, ສີເທົາ ບໍ່ແມ່ ບໍ່?
What color is your shirt, it's light green, isn't it?	sýa càw sǐi njǎṅ, sǐi khǎaw-ōon, ບວວ mēεn ບວວ?	ເສື້ອເຈົ້າສີຫຍັງ, ສີຂຽວອ່ອນ ບໍ່ແມ່ ບໍ່?
What color is your shirt, it's dark yellow, isn't it?	sýa càw sǐi njǎṅ, sǐi lýaṅ-kēε, ບວວ mēεn ບວວ?	ເສື້ອເຈົ້າສີຫຍັງ, ສີເຫລືອງເກ່ ບໍ່ແມ່ ບໍ່?
What color is your shirt, it's blackish red, isn't it?	sýa càw sǐi njǎṅ, sǐi dam-dεεṅ, ບວວ mēεn ບວວ?	ເສື້ອເຈົ້າສີຫຍັງ, ສີດໍາແດງ ບໍ່ ແມ່ ບໍ່?

M-3

Pants	sôoŋ	ໂສ້ງ, ສີ້ງ
Neck tie	ká-rā-vát	ກາຣະວັດ
Shoes	kêep	ເກີບ
Lao skirt	sîn	ສີ້
Socks	thǒŋ-thàw	ຖົງເທົ້າ, ຖົງຕີນ
Brief- case	ká-paw	ກະເປົາ

What color are his pants?	sôoŋ láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	ໂສ້ງລາວສີຫຍັງ?
What color is his necktie?	ká-rā-vát láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	ກາຣະວັດລາວ ສີຫຍັງ?
What color are his shoes?	kêep láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	ເກີບລາວສີຫຍັງ?
What color is her Lao skirt?	sîn láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	ສີ້ ລາວສີຫຍັງ?
What color are his socks?	thǒŋ-thàw láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	ຖົງເທົ້າລາວສີຫຍັງ?
What color is his briefcase?	ká-paw láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	ກະເປົາລາວສີຫຍັງ?

C-1

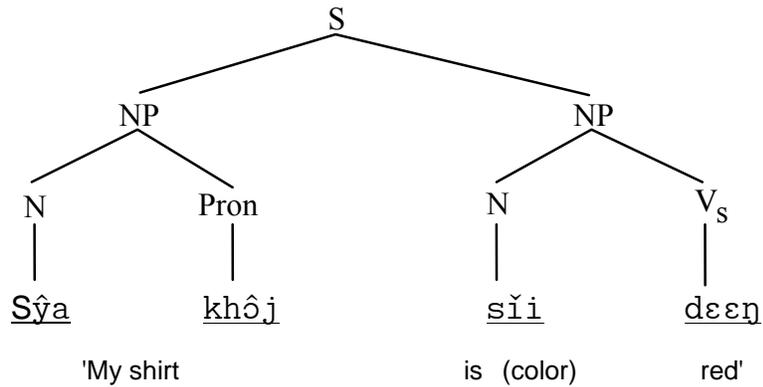
- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. What color is your tie? | A. ká-rā-vát càw sǐi njǎŋ? |
| B. My tie is red. | B. ká-rā-vát khôj sǐi dɛɛŋ. |

C-2

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. What color are your shoes?
They are brown, aren't they? | A. kêep càw sǐi njǎŋ, sǐi nàm-taan
mɛɛn boɔ? |
| B. Yes, my shoes are brown. | B. mɛɛn lèɛw, kêep khôj sǐi nàm-taan. |

NOTES

- 1) sǐi 'color' normally precedes the word for colors, i. e., sǐi dɛɛŋ '(color) red', sǐi khǎaw '(color) green', etc.
- 2) Sentences with sǐi in the predicate are normally verb less.



- 3) Verbs of color usually occur as modifiers of sǐi and are questioned with njǎŋ 'What (kind)?'

Q: s̄ya càw sǐi njǎŋ ? 'What color's your shirt?'

A: sǐi khǎaw '(It's) green.'

- 4) Color verbs may be modified by the addition of kɛɛ 'dark (in shade)' and ɔɔŋ 'light (in shade)', thus sǐi khǎaw ɔɔŋ means 'light green' and sǐi dɛɛŋ kɛɛ, 'dark red.' Mixtures are sometimes indicated by using two color verbs such as sǐi dam dɛɛŋ 'reddish black', or sǐi khǎaw l̄yŋ 'yellowish white'.

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) h́ya lám nìi _____ (What color is this boat?)
 - (b) s̄ya ph̄yyn n̄an _____ (That shirt is red.)
 - (c) m̄aak-k̄iaŋ n̄uaj nj̄aj n̄an _____ (That large orange is green, isn't it?)
m̄ēen boɔ?
 - (d) láaw míi c̄oɔk _____ boɔ? (Does he have a blue glass?)
 - (e) k̄aj too n̄an s̄i _____ (That chicken's brown.)
 - (f) s̄ya f̄on láaw _____ (Her raincoat is light green.)
 - (g) _____ c̄aw s̄i dam (Your shoes are black.)
 - (h) _____ láaw s̄i nj̄aŋ? (What color is her Lao skirt?)
 - (i) k̄a-paw kh̄oŋ _____ (My briefcase is dark brown.)
 - (j) k̄a-r̄a-vát c̄aw s̄i _____ (Your tie is yellow.)

Answers: (a) s̄i nj̄aŋ (b) s̄i d̄eɛŋ (c) s̄i kh̄iaw (d) s̄i f̄aa (e) n̄am-taan
(f) s̄i-kh̄iaw-ōɔn (g) k̄ēɔp (h) s̄in (i) s̄i n̄am-taan k̄ēɛ (j) l̄ȳaŋ

Cycle 52

M-1

Walk; fast, quick	njāaŋ; wáj	ຢ່າງ; ໄວ
Slow, work	sàa, hētwiak	ຊ້າ, ເຮັດວຽກ
Gentle; speak, say	khōɔj; wàw	ຄ່ອຍ; ເວົ້າ
Loud, speak	daŋ, wàw	ດັງ, ເວົ້າ
Long time, stay, there	don, jūu, hân	ດົ, ຢູ່, ຫັ້ນ
Difficult, like	njàak, māk	ຍາກ, ມັກ
Much, many; eat	lǎaj; kin	ຫລາຍ; ກິ

He walks too fast.	láaw njāaŋ wáj phòot.	ລາວຢ່າງໄວໂພດ.
He works too slow.	láaw hētwiak sàa phòot.	ລາວເຮັດວຽກຊ້າໂພດ.
He speaks too softly.	láaw wàw khōɔj phòot.	ລາວເວົ້າຄ່ອຍໂພດ.
He speaks too loud.	láaw wàw daŋ phòot.	ລາວເວົ້າດັງໂພດ.
He stayed there too long.	láaw jūu hân don phòot.	ລາວຢູ່ຫັ້ນດົ ໂພດ.
He likes to make things harder than they are.	láaw māk njàak phòot.	ລາວມັກຍາກໂພດ.
He eats too much.	láaw kin lǎaj phòot.	ລາວກິ ຫລາຍໂພດ.

M-2

Walk fast	njāaŋ wáj	ຍ່າງໄວ
Pretty, beautiful; dance	ŋám, fòon	ງາມ; ພ້ອ
Learn, study; good	hían, kēŋ	ຮຽນ ; ເກັ່ງ
Sings songs; melodious	hòon-phéŋ, mūan	ຮ້ອງເພງ; ມ່ວ
Able to speak a language	dàj pháa-sǎa	ໄດ້ພາສາ
Lift, weight	njōk, nàm-nák	ຍົກ, ນ້ຳໜັກ

How fast does she walk?	láaw njāaŋ wáj paan-daj?	ລາວຍ່າງໄວປາ ໃດ?
How well does she dance?	láaw fòon ŋám paan-daj?	ລາວພ້ອ ງາມປາ ໃດ?
How is he doing in his studies?	láaw hían kēŋ paan-daj?	ລາວຮຽນເກັ່ງປານໃດ?
How well does she sing?	láaw hòon-phéŋ mūan paan-daj?	ລາວຮ້ອງເພງມ່ວ ປາ ໃດ?
How well can he speak Lao?	láaw dàj pháa-sǎa láaw dii paan-daj?	ລາວໄດ້ພາສາລາວດີປາ ໃດ?
How much weight can he lift?	láaw njōk nàm-nák dàj lǎaj paan-daj?	ລາວຍົກນ້ຳໜັກໄດ້ຫລາຍປາ ໃດ?

M-3

Walk, fast	njāaŋ, wáj	ຍ່າງ, ໄວ
High, ascend, it	sũuŋ, khÿn, mán	ສູງ, ຂຶ້ນ, ມີ
Strong, powerful; car	h'éen; lōt	ແຮງ; ລົດ
Write; pretty, beautiful	khǎan; ŋáam	ຂຽ ; ງາມ
Learn, fast	hían, wáj	ຮຽ , ໄວ

He doesn't walk that fast.	láaw njāaŋ bōo wáj paan-daj	ລາວຍ່າງບໍ່ໄວປາ ໃດ.
It doesn't go up that high.	mán khÿn bōo sũuŋ paan-daj.	ມີ ຂຶ້ ບໍ່ສູງປາ ໃດ.
His car doesn't have much power.	lōt láaw lēen bōo h'éen paan-daj.	ລົດລາວແລ່ ບໍ່ ແຮງປາ ໃດ.
His handwriting is not that pretty.	láaw khǎan bōo ŋáam paan-daj.	ລາວຂຽ ບໍ່ງາມປາ ໃດ.
He doesn't learn that fast.	láaw hían bōo wáj paan-daj.	ລາວຮຽ ບໍ່ໄວປາ ໃດ.

M-4

Drive, fast	kháp lōt, wáj	ຂັບລົດ, ໄວ
Exercise	ôk kam-lánj	ອອກກຳລັງ
Physical, often	[hāaŋ] kaaj, lỳaj	(ຮ່າງ) ກາຍ, ເລື້ອຍ
Give, much	aw háj, lǎaj	ເອົາໃຫ້, ຫລາຍ
Take; all, completely	aw paj, mót	ເອົາໄປ; ຫມົດ
Eat, all entirely	kin, mót	ກິ , ຫມົດ

He didn't drive that fast.	láaw bōo kháp lōt wáj paan-daj.	ລາວບໍ່ຂັບລົດໄວປາ ໃດ.
He doesn't do much physical exercise.	láaw bōo ôk kam-lánj kaaj lỳaj lỳaj paan-daj.	ລາວບໍ່ອອກກຳລັງກາຍເລື້ອຍໆ ປາ ໃດ.
He didn't give that much.	láaw bōo aw háj lǎaj paan-daj.	ລາວບໍ່ເອົາໃຫ້ຫລາຍປາ ໃດ.
He didn't take all the books.	láaw bōo aw pỳm paj mót.	ລາວບໍ່ເອົາປຶ້ມໄປຫມົດ.
He's not going to eat all of it.	láaw si bōo kin mót.	ລາວຊິບໍ່ກິ ຫມົດ.

C-1

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. You speak too fast. Speak slowly, please. | A. càw wàw wáj phòot. wàw sàa sàa dēε. |
| B. I'm sorry. I'll speak slowly. | B. khǒwthòot. khôj si wàw sàa sàa. |

C-2

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. How well does she dance? | A. láaw fòon ḡáam paan-daj? |
| B. She doesn't dance very well. | B. láaw fòon bōo ḡáam paan-daj. |

C-3

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A. Is he going to drive fast? | A. láaw si kháp lōt wáj bōo? |
| B. No. He's not going to drive fast. | B. bōo láaw si bōo kháp lōt wáj. |

C-4

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| A. Is his handwriting pretty? | A. láaw khǎan ḡáam bōo? |
| B. His handwriting is not very pretty. | B. láaw khǎan bōo ḡáam paan-daj. |

ຈົງສັງເກດເບິ່ງ ຈຸດປະສົງ ຂອງແຕ່ລະພາກ ຂອງບົດຮຽນນີ້ ແລ້ວ ທົບທວ ຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈ ຂອງ ກຽ ເບິ່ງດູ!
ຈົງຂະຫຍາຍກາ ຝຶກຫັດໃ ພາກ C ອອກອີກ ແລ້ວແຕ່ງເນື້ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນ! ລອງອະທິບາຍຮູບພາບຕ່າງໆ ເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

- 1) phòot 'to be in excess' normally occurs after stative verbs láaw njāaη wáj phòot 'He walks too fast'. The negative form of phòot is bōo. ... paan-daj 'Not very'.
The position of bōo in the sentence is important: Compare láaw bōo njāaη wáj paan-daj 'He doesn't walk very fast' or 'He isn't walking very fast' (because he doesn't want to) with láaw njāaη bōo [dàj] wáj paan-daj 'He doesn't walk very fast' (because he is unable to walk faster).
- 2) The form paan-daj is used after the stative verb in questions to find out the manner in which an activity is being carried out: láaw hòoη phéeη mūan paan-daj 'How well does she sing?'

APPLICATION

- 1) Write out reasonable answer to the following questions:

- (a) láaw wàw daη paan-daj? láaw wáw _____
- (b) mía càw njāaη wáj paan-daj? láaw njāaη _____
- (c) láaw jūu hân don paan-daj? _____

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (d) láaw át pá-tuu _____
(He closed the door too quickly.)
- (e) láaw _____ kháp-lõt _____ paan-daj
(He's not driving very fast (because he doesn't want to).)
- (f) láaw hòoη phéeη _____ mūan paan-daj
(She doesn't sing very melodiously (because she has a very poor voice).)
- (g) càw āan wáj _____
(You read very fast.)
- (h) láaw wàw pháa-sǎa láaw _____
(He speaks Lao too slowly.)

Answers: (a) daη phòot or bōo daη paan-daj (b) wáj phòot or bōo wáj paan-daj
(c) hók aa-thīt or don phòot or bōo don paan-daj (d) wáj phòot
(e) bōo, wáj (f) bōo (g) lǎaj (h) sàa phòot

Cycle 53

M-1

Read fast	āan wáj	ອ່າ ໄວ
Speak clearly	wàw cèeᅇᅇ	ເວົ້າແຈ້ງ
Explain thoroughly	á-thī-baaᅇ lā-íat	ອະທິບາຍລະອຽດ
Be a good student	hían dii	ຮຽ ດີ
Be a good learner	hían kēᅇᅇ	ຮຽນເກັ່ງ

Does he read fast?	láaw āan wáj boᅇᅇ?	ລາວອ່າ ໄວບໍ?
Did he speak clearly?	láaw wàw cèeᅇᅇ boᅇᅇ?	ລາວເວົ້າແຈ້ງບໍ?
Did he explain it thoroughly?	láaw á-thī-baaᅇ lā-íat boᅇᅇ?	ລາວອະທິບາຍລະອຽດບໍ?
Is he a good student?	láaw hían dii boᅇᅇ?	ລາວຮຽ ດີບໍ?
Is he a good learner?	láaw hían kēᅇᅇ boᅇᅇ?	ລາວຮຽນເກັ່ງບໍ?

M-2

Smart	kēŋ	ເກັ່ງ, ສະຫງາດ
Clear	cèɛŋ	ແຈ້ງ
Serious	hàaj h'éɛŋ	ຮ້າຍແຮງ
To be drunk	máw	ເມົາ
Enjoyable	mūan	ມ່ວ

Pretty skilful.	kēŋ sǒm-khúan.	ເກັ່ງສົມຄວນ.
Pretty clear.	cèɛŋ sǒm-khúan.	ແຈ້ງສົມຄວ .
Pretty serious.	hàaj h'éɛŋ sǒm-khúan.	ຮ້າຍແຮງສົມຄວ .
Pretty drunk.	máw sǒm-khúan.	ເມົາສົມຄວ .
Pretty enjoyable.	mūan sǒm-khúan.	ມ່ວ ສົມຄວ .

C-1

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| A. Does he read fast? | A. láaw āan wáj boo? |
| B. Pretty fast. | B. wáj sǒm-khúan. |

C-2

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. How fast does he read? | A. láaw āan wáj paan-daj? |
| B. Pretty fast. | B. wáj sǒm-khúan. |

C-3

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. Is he a pretty good student? | A. láaw hían kēŋ sǒm-khúan boo? |
| B. Pretty good (skilful). | B. kēŋ sǒm-khúan jūu. |

NOTES

- 1) sǒm-khúan 'suitably, property' is used after stative verbs to indicate a degree which is neither too much in one direction nor the other.

láaw āan wáj sǒm-khúan 'He reads fairly fast.'

- 2) When njâak 'to be difficult' occurs after an action verb, it indicates that the action is taken with difficulty:

á-thī-baa_j njâak 'It is difficult to explain.'

APPLICATION

1) Answer the following questions with an indication that the action referred to is done fairly well:

- (a) láaw wàw pháa-sǎa láaw dii bōo? _____
- (b) láaw lónj khân-daj wáj paan-daj? _____
- (c) láaw lóoj-nàm kēj paan-daj? _____
- (d) kàn-caj sīi náa-thíi njàak paan-daj ? _____

Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide.

- (e) láaw lāw lýaŋ nàn _____ dii
(He told the story in detail.)
- (f) láaw kin lāw-bia lǎaj kèew. láaw _____
(He drank several bottles of beer. He's pretty drunk.)
- (g) láaw kháp lōt _____
(He drives pretty fast.)
- (h) paj bēj sīi-née _____
(Going to the movies is pretty good fun.)
- (i) át pōoŋ-jiam nàn phùn _____ bōo?
(Is it difficult to close that window over there?)
- (j) láaw á-thī-baaŋ _____
(His explanations are not very thorough.)
- (k) tít-tōo káp phūu nàn _____
(It's not very difficult to contact that person.)
- (l) pīan jaan njàak _____
(Changing a tire is fairly difficult.)
- (m) láaw tii-cák _____
(She types fairly well.)
- (n) aa-kaan khǒj láaw _____ sǒm-khúan
(He is rather seriously ill.)

Answers: (a) dii sǒm-khúan (b) wáj sǒm-khúan (c) kēj sǒm-khúan
(d) njǝsk sǒm-khúan (e) lā-iat (f) máw sǒm-khúan (g) wáj sǒm-khúan
(h) mūan sǒm-khúan (i) njǝsk (j) bōo lā-iat paan-daj
(k) bōo njàak paan-daj (l) sǒm-khúan (m) wáj sǒm-khúan (n) hàaj-héew

Cycle 54

M-1

Eat	kin	ກິ
Drive fast	kháp lōt wáj	ຂັບລົດໄວ
Be noisy	fōt	ຟັດ
Be lazy	khîi-khàan	ຂີ້ຄ້ານ
Complain, grumble	cōm	ຈົ່ມ

Don't eat too much!	jāa kin lǎaj!	ຢ່າກິ ຫລາຍ!
Don't drive too fast!	jāa kháp lōt wáj lǎaj!	ຢ່າຂັບລົດໄວຫລາຍ!
Don't be too noisy!	jāa fōt lǎaj!	ຢ່າຟັດຫລາຍ!
Don't be too lazy!	jāa khîi-khàan lǎaj!	ຢ່າຂີ້ຄ້ານຫລາຍ!
Don't complain too much!	jāa cōm lǎaj!	ຢ່າຈົ່ມຫລາຍ!

M-2

Touch	tē-tòṅ	ແຕະຕ້ອງ
Block the way	tan tháaṅ	ຕ້ ທາງ
Make noise	hēt sǎaṅ daṅ	ເຮັດສຽງດັງ
Disturb	lōp-kuan	ລົບກວ
Step on, grass	jíap, njáa	ຢຽບ, ຫຍ້າ
Smoke	sūup jaa	ສູບຢາ

Please don't touch!	ká-rū-náa jāa tē-tòṅ!	ກະຮຸ າຢ່າແຕະຕ້ອງ!
Please don't block the way!	ká-rū-náa jāa tan tháaṅ!	ກະຮຸ າຢ່າຕ້ ທາງ!
Please don't make noise!	ká-rū-náa jāa hēt sǎaṅ daṅ!	ກະຮຸ າຢ່າເຮັດສຽງດັງ!
Please don't disturb (anyone)!	ká-rū-náa jāa lōp-kuan!	ກະຮຸ າຢ່າລົບກວ !
Please don't step on the grass!	ká-rū-náa jāa jíap njáa!	ກະຮຸ າຢ່າຢຽບຫຍ້າ!
Please don't smoke!	ká-rū-náa jāa sūup jaa!	ກະຮຸ າຢ່າສູບຢາ!

M-3

Enter	khâw	ເຂົ້າ
Smoke	sûup jaa	ສູບຢາ
Open	pêot	ເປີດ
Pass, race	sūaη	ຊ່ວງ
Trespass	lūaη-làm	ລ່ວງລຳ
Dump trash	thím khîi-njÿa	ຖິ້ມຂີ້ເຫຍື້ອ
Pick flowers	dét dỏk-màj	ເດັດດອກໄມ້

Do not enter.	hâam khâw.	ຫ້າມເຂົ້າ
Do not smoke.	hâam sûup jaa.	ຫ້າມສູບຢາ.
Do not open.	hâam pêot.	ຫ້າມເປີດ.
Do not pass.	hâam sūaη.	ຫ້າມຊ່ວງ.
Do not trespass.	hâam lūaη làm.	ຫ້າມລ່ວງລຳ.
No dumping.	hâam thím khîi-njÿa.	ຫ້າມຖິ້ມຂີ້ເຫຍື້ອ.
Do not pick flowers.	hâam dék dỏk-màj.	ຫ້າມເດັດດອກໄມ້.

C-1

- A. I don't want him to eat too much.
would you please tell him for me.
- B. Don't eat too much.

- A. khôj bōo jāak hāj láaw kin lǎaj
càw bōok láaw hāj khôj dēε.
- B. jāa kin lǎaj.

C-2

- A. What did they tell us?
- B. They told us, please don't touch.

- A. khá-càw bōok njǎṅ háv?
- B. khá-càw bōok háv wāa, ká-rū-náa
jāa té-tòoṅ.

C-3

- A. What does that sign say?
- B. No, smoking.

- A. pàaj nàṅ bōok njǎṅ?
- B. hām sūup jāa.

ສຳລັບກາ ຝຶກຫັດເພີ່ມເຕີມໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້ ກໍມີແຕ່ວ່າ ໃຫ້ ກຽງ ບອກກັ ບໍ່ໃຫ້ເຮັດສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງ ື່ງ ຫລື ໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າປະຕິບັດຕາມ ຄຳບອກຂອງ າຍຄຽ. ກາ ຝຶກຫັດຄວ ໃຫ້ເປັ ໄປດ້ວຍ ຄວາມໄວທຳມະດາ.

NOTES

- 1) The request form in Lao is the Verb phase without NP (subject):

paj kin khâw 'Go eat!'

The request may be softened by putting ká-rū-náa (Lit. 'kindness') 'please' before NP, ká-rū-náa wàw sàa sàa 'Please speak slower' or by putting dēε after VP:

njāaṅ wáj wáj dēε 'Walk faster, please.'

- 2) The negative request form is: jāa 'don't' + VP: jāa kin lǎaj 'Don't eat too much.' This request form may also be softened by putting ká-rū-náa before it: ká-rū-náa jāa tan tháaṅ 'Please don't block the way.'

- 3) In written Lao hām 'It is forbidden to' is normally used. One sometimes sees signs like this: hām sūup jāa 'No Smoking'. hām is rarely used in spoken Lao in this construction.

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) _____ jāa sūup jaa (Please don't smoke.)
- (b) (A sign) _____ lūaŋ làm (No Trespassing.)
- (c) jāa _____ lǎaj (Don't be too lazy.)
- (d) āan daŋ daŋ _____ (Read loudly, please.)
- (e) _____ wáj wáj (Walk fast.)
- (f) _____ tōop khám-thǎam khôo nàŋ (Don't answer that question.)
- (g) (Sign) _____ thāaj hùup jūu nìi (No picture taking here.)
- (h) jāa khuá-kin _____ (Don't cook too much.)
- (i) _____ thée lóng hân (Don't dump it out there.)
- (j) wáaŋ wàj phùn _____ (Please put it over there.)
- (k) (Sign): hāam _____ (Don't enter.)
- (l) _____ kin aa-hǎan phét lǎaj (Don't eat too much hot spicy food.)

Answers: (a) ká-rū-náa (b) hāam (c) khîi-khàan (d) dēε (e) njāaŋ (f) jāa
(g) hāam (h) lǎaj (i) jāa (j) dēε (k) khâw (l) jāa

Cycle 55

M-1

Where	sǎj	ໃສ?
What	njǎṅ	ຫຍັງ?

Where have you been (to)?	càw paj sâj máa?	ເຈົ້າໄປໃສມາ?
(You just come back) what did you do?	càw paj njǎṅ máa?	ເຈົ້າໄປຫຍັງມາ?

M-2

Pagoda, temple	wāt	ວັດ
To eat (meal)	kin-khâw	ກິ ເຂົ້າ
See the doctor	paj hǎa mǎw	ໄປຫາໝໍ
To get a shot	sák jaa	ສັກຢາ
Warehouse	sǎaṅ káp khṽaṅ	ສາງເກັບເຄື່ອງ

I've been to the temple.	khôj paj wāt máa.	ຂ້ອຍໄປວັດມາ.
I've been to eat.	khôj paj kin khâw máa.	ຂ້ອຍໄປກິ ເຂົ້າມາ.
I've been to see the doctor.	khôj paj hǎa mǎw máa.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຫາໝໍມາ.
I've come back from getting a shot.	khôj paj sák jaa máa.	ຂ້ອຍໄປສັກຢາມາ.
I've been to the warehouse.	khôj paj sǎaṅ káp khṽaṅ máa.	ຂ້ອຍໄປສາງເກັບເຄື່ອງມາ.

C-1

A. Where have you been?	A. càw paj sǎj máa?
B. I've been to school.	B. khôj paj hóoṅ-hían máa.

C-2

A. (You just come back) What did you do?	A. càw paj hēt njǎṅ máa?
B. I've been to eat.	B. khôj paj kin-khâw máa.

NOTES

- 1) The construction paj...máa is used to indicate that someone is returning from having been to some place or having done something:

khôj paj wāt máa 'I've just been to the temple'.

khôj paj kin khâw máa 'I've been out to eat.'

The type of question may reflect the difference referred to above:

càw paj sǎj máa? 'Where have you been?'

càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa? 'What have you been doing?'

(Lit. What do you come from doing?)

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) khôj _____ kin khâw ____ (I've been to eat.)

(b) càw paj _____ máa? (What have you been doing?)

(c) khôj paj _____ máa (I've been to get a shot.)

- 2) Answer the following questions according to the actual situation:

(d) càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa?

(e) càw paj sǎj máa?

(f) càw bōo paj hēt njǎŋ máa bōo?

(g) càw bōo paj sǎj máa bōo?

- 3) Translate the following sentences into English:

(h) láaw paj khǎj ká-cεε pá-tuu nàn máa

(i) phyan khôj paj tii-sók jūu pá-thèet wiat-náam máa

(j) láaw paj khâw thǎew sūa-móoŋ khōŋ máa.

Answers: 1(a) paj... máa 1(b) hēt njǎŋ 1(c) sák-jaa 2 Your answers depend on what you have been doing. 3 (h) He just came back from unlocking that door (i) My friend has just come back from fighting in Vietnam (j) He has been standing in line for half an hour.

Cycle 56

M-1

You (pl.)	phùak-càw	ພວກເຈົ້າ
Book (classifier)	pỳm, hũa	ປຶ້ມ, ຫົວ
Car (classifier)	lōt, khán	ລົດ, ຄັ້
Airplane (classifier)	hýa-bin, lám	ເຮືອບິ , ລໍ່າ
Gun (classifier)	pyyn, ká-bôok	ປື , ກະບອກ
Paper, sheet (classifier)	cìà, phēen	ເຈ້ຍ, ແຜ່
Boat (classifier)	hýa, lám	ເຮືອ, ລໍ່າ

Where did you all come from?	phùak-càw máa tēε sǎj?	ພວກເຈົ້າມາແຕ່ໃສ?
Where did this book come from?	pỳm hũa nìi máa tēε sǎj?	ປຶ້ມຫົວນີ້ມາແຕ່ໃສ?
Where did this car come from?	lōt khán nìi máa tēε sǎj?	ລົດຄັນນີ້ມາແຕ່ໃສ?
Where did this airplane come from?	hýa-bin lám nìi máa tēε sǎj?	ເຮືອບິນລໍ່ານີ້ມາແຕ່ໃສ?
Where did this gun come from?	pyyn ká-bôok nìi máa tēε sǎj?	ປືນກະບອກນີ້ມາແຕ່ໃສ?
Where did this paper come from?	cìà phēen nìi máa tēε sǎj?	ເຈ້ຍແຜ່ນນີ້ມາແຕ່ໃສ?
Where did this boat come from?	hýa lám nìi máa tēε sǎj?	ເຮືອລໍ່ານີ້ມາແຕ່ໃສ?

M-2

Market	tá-lâat	ຕະຫຼາດ
Bring	aw máa	ເອົາມາ
School	hóoŋ-hían	ໂຮງຮຽນ
Paksan	pâak-sán	ປາກຊັ
Luang Prabang	lũaŋ-phā-baaŋ	ຫລວງພຣະບາງ
Bring....	aw..máa,	ເອົາ... ມາ
Office building	hóoŋ-kaan	ໂຮງກາ
Policeman	tam-lûat	ຕໍາຫຼວດ

We came from the market.	phùak khôj máa tēε tá-lâat.	ພວກຂ້ອຍມາແຕ່ຕະຫຼາດ.
He brought this book from school.	láaw aw pỳm hũa nìi máa tēε hóoŋ-hían.	ລາວເອົາປຶ້ມຫນັ້ນມາແຕ່ໂຮງຮຽນ .
This car came from Paksan.	lõt khán nìi máa tēε pâak-sán.	ລົດຄັນນີ້ມາແຕ່ປາກຊັນ.
This boat came from Luang Prabang.	hýa lám nìi máa tēε lũaŋ-phā-baaŋ.	ເຮືອລໍານີ້ມາແຕ່ຫລວງພຣະບາງ.
I brought this piece of paper from the office.	khôj aw cìà phēεn nìi máa tēε hóoŋ-kaan.	ຂ້ອຍເອົາເຈ້ຍແຜ່ນນີ້ມາແຕ່ໂຮງກາ .
The policeman brought this gun.	tam-lûat aw pỳyn ká-bôok nìi máa.	ຕໍາຫຼວດເອົາປື ກະບອກນີ້ມາ.

C-1

- A. Where are you coming from?
- B. I come from my house.

- A. càw máa tēε sǎj?
- B. khôj máa tēε hýan khôj.

C-2

- A. Where did this airplane come from?
- B. It came from Bangkok.

- A. hýa-bin lám nìi máa tēε sǎj?
- B. máa tēε baan-kôk.

C-3

- A. Where did this book come from?
- B. I brought it from school.

- A. pým húa nìi màa tēε sǎj?
- B. khôj aw máa tēε hóoη-hían.

ຈົ່ງສົມມຸດສະຖາ ະກາ ຂຶ້ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ ັກຮຽ ເບີ ຕົວສະແດງ ໂດຍກາ ສີ ທະ າ ຫລື ຖາມເອົາ ລາຍລະອຽດຕ່າງໆ ຈາກກັ ແລະ ກັ , ເບີ ຕີ້ ວ່າ: ຄື ສອງຄື ຢື ລົມກັ ຢູ່ເດີນຍີ , ຄົວລົດໂດຍສາ , ຫລື ຕາມສະຖານທີ່ອື່ນໆອີກ. ກ່ອ ຈະໃຫ້ ັກຮຽ ຝຶກຫັດ ກໍຈົ່ງໃຫ້ແ ໃຈວ່າ ທ່າ ໄດ້ພາເຂົາເຈົ້າຝຶກຫັດບົດຮຽ ຈີ ໄດ້ດີສົມຄວ ແລ້ວເສຍກ່ອ ; ບໍ່ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ອາດຈະເບີ ກາ ເສຍເວລາເບົາໆ.

NOTES

tēε + Location is used refer to the point of origin of something (i. e. the starting point of a trip, the place where something was made, etc.). It is similar in usage to câak. Neither câak nor tēε refer to the birthplace of a person.

Q: hýa-bin lám nìi máa tēε sǎj? 'Where did the plane come from?'

A: máa tēε baan-kôk 'It came from Bangkok.'

APPLICATION

1. How would you find out where certain thing originated, such as Japanese cars, German beer, etc.?
2. How would you find out where a certain vehicle had just come from, such as an airplane, bus, etc.?

Answers: to both 1. and 2. are: (NP) ... máa tēε sǎj?

Cycle 57

M-1

Take	aw paj/máa	ເອົາ...ໄປ/ມາ
Chicken	kāj	ໄກ່
Sell	khǎaj	ຂາຍ
Buy and take	sỳy paj	ຊື້ໄປ
Read	āan	ອ່າ
Shave	thǎε	ແຖ
Head	hũa	ຫົວ
Enter the priesthood	bûat	ບວດ
Get dressed	tēεη-too	ແຕ່ງໂຕ
Festival	bun	ບຸນ
Hire	càaη	ຈ້າງ
Look at, look after	bǝη	ເບິ່ງ
Offspring	lùuk	ລູກ
Request	hòວη-khǝວ	ຮອງຂໍ
Help; assist	sōວj	ຊ່ວຍ
Remove, take off	pót . . . ôວk	ປົດອອກ
Wash	làaη	ລ້າງ
Hand	mýy	ມື

He is taking the chickens to sell. láaw si aw kāj paj khǎaj. ລາວຊິເອົາໄກ່ໄປຂາຍ.

He is buying the book to read. láaw si sỳy pỳm paj āan. ລາວຊິຊື້ປື້ມໄປອ່ານ.

He is having his head shaved to enter the priesthood. láaw si thěε hũa búat ລາວຊິແຖຫົວບວດ.

He is dressing up to go to the festival. láaw si tēεη-too paj bun. ລາວຊິແຕ່ງໂຕໄປບຸ້ນ .

He is hiring someone to come and look after his children. láaw si càaη khón máa bēη lùuk. ລາວຊິຈ້າງຄົນ ມາເບິ່ງລູກ.

He is requesting them to come and help. láaw si hòoη-khǎw hāj khá-càw máa sōoj. ລາວຊິຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ ເຂົາເຈົ້າມາຊ່ອຍ.

He is removing his shoes and putting them away. láaw si pót kâep ôok wàj. ລາວຊິປົດເກີບອອກໄວ້.

He is washing his hand in order to eat. láaw si làaη mỳy kin khâw. ລາວຊິລ້າງມືກິ ເຂົ້າ.

M-2

Buy	sỳy	ຊື້
Paint	nàm-sǐi	ນ້ຳສີ
Bring	aw..máa	ເອົາ...ມາ
Shave one's head	thěε hũa	ແຖຫົວ
Build a fire	daŋ-fáj	ດັງໄຟ
Go up	khỳn paj	ຂຶ້ນໄປ
Come down	lóng máa	ລົງມາ
Park a car	cóot lōt	ຈອດລົດ
Follow	nám paj	ໍາໄປ

What is he buying the paint for?	láaw si sỳy nàm-sǐi máa hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ ຊຶ້ນ້ຳສີມາເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What is he having his head shaved for?	láaw si thěε hũa hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ແຖຫົວເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What is he starting a fire for?	láaw si daŋ-fáj hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ດັງໄຟເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What is he going up there for?	láaw si khỳn paj hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ຂຶ້ນໄປເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What is he coming down here for?	láaw si lóng máa hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ລົງມາເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What is he parking the car for?	láaw si cóot lōt hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ຈອດລົດເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What is he following them here for?	láaw si nám khá-càw paj hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊື້ ີາເຂົາເຈົ້າມາເຮັດຫຍັງ?

C-1

- A. Why is he getting dressed?
(get dressed to go the festival)
- B. He is getting dressed to go to the festival.

- A. láaw si tēɛŋ-too hēt njǎŋ?
[tēɛŋ-too paj bun]
- B. láaw si tēɛŋ-too paj bun.

C-2

- A. What are you going to do? (Hire someone)
- B. I'm going to hire someone.
- A. What are you going hire someone for?
(to look after the children)
- B. I'm hiring someone to come to look
after my children.

- A. càw si hēt njǎŋ? [càaŋ khón]
- B. khôj si càaŋ khón.
- A. càw si càaŋ khón máa hēt njǎŋ?
[bəŋ lùuk]
- B. khôj si càaŋ khón máa
bəŋ lùuk.

C-3

- A. What are you doing? (Washing my hands)
- B. I'm washing my hand.
- A. Are you washing your hands in
order to read ?
- B. No, I'm washing my hands in order to eat.

- A. càw hēt njǎŋ? [làaŋ mýy]
- B. khôj làaŋ mýy.
- A. càw si làaŋ mýy paj
āan nǎŋ-sýy boo?
- B. bōo, khôj si làaŋ mýy paj
kin-khâw.

ໃ ບົດນີ້, ທ່າ ຄົງເຫັ ແລ້ວວ່າ ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳກິຣິຍາຫລາຍຄຳຕິດຕໍ່ກັ , ເປັ ຕີ້ ວ່າ: "ໄປລ້າງມືມາກິ ເຂົ້າ". ຈົ່ງຖາມ
ນັກຮຽນດ້ວຍຄຳຖາມທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງຕອບດ້ວຍປະໂຫຍກທີ່ໃຊ້ ຄຳກິຣິຍາຫລາຍຄຳຕິດກັນເບິ່ງດູ.

NOTES

- 1) In English Verb Phrases of Purpose may be joined to other VP by to, as in:

NP	+	VP	+	to	-	VP (Purpose)
He		brought chicken		to		sell.

Compare this with Lao:

NP	+	VP	+	VP (Purpose)
láaw		<u>aw</u> <u>kāj</u> <u>máa</u>		<u>khǎaj</u>
He		brought chicken	(to)	sell.'

- 2) bûat means 'to enter the Buddhist priesthood'. All young Lao men of the Buddhist religion are supposed to spend some period of time during their lives living as monks in a monastery. One's head is shaved and all worldly possessions are given away before entry.
- 3) A bun is a temple fair. Each temple has at least one bun a year as an occasion for reading certain Buddhist scriptures and also as a means of raising money to take care of temple needs. Many kinds of amusements (dances, songs, games, etc.) and many kinds of food are available.

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw si jzym p̄ym khôj _____
(He will borrow my book to read.)
- (b) j̄uu h̄yan láaw b̄o m̄i n̄am láaw si _____ làaη.
(There's no water in his house. He'll take his car out to wash it.)
- (c) láaw si _____ s̄oη paj h̄aj ph̄yan láaw.
(He'll take pictures to send to his friend.)
- (d) láaw si p̄ot kêep kh̄u māj _____
(He'll take off his new shoes to put them away.)
- (e) láaw si _____ p̄εε n̄aη-s̄y h̄aj láaw.
(He'll bring you to translate the book for him.)
- (f) láaw si _____ k̄uat b̄eη w̄iak kh̄oη ph̄uak-h̄aw.
(He'll come down to check our work.)
- (g) láaw si _____ kh̄on dooj-s̄an.
(He'll stop his bus to pick up passengers.)
- (h) láaw j̄aak pen kh̄u-baa. láaw si _____
(He would like to be a monk priest. He'll shave his head in order to enter the priesthood.)
- (i) láaw b̄oak h̄aj kh̄oη _____ kh̄ua-kin.
(He told me to build a fire to cook with.)
- (j) láaw si kh̄yn _____ j̄uu s̄an th̄i s̄oη.
(He'll go up to sleep on the second floor.)

Answers: (a) paj āan (b) aw l̄ot láaw paj (c) th̄aaj-h̄uup (d) ôok-w̄aj
(e) aw càw máa (f) l̄oη máa (g) c̄ot l̄ot-m̄ee aw
(h) th̄ε h̄a b̄uat (i) daη-f̄aj (j) paj nóon

Cycle 58

M-1

Nine	kàw	ເກົ້າ
Five-thirty	hâa móoŋ khəŋ	ຫ້າໂມງເຄິ່ງ
Monday	wán-can	ວັນຈ
Friday	wán-súk	ວັນສຸກ
Morning	sàw	ເຊົ້າ
Night time	khām	ຄ່ຳຄື
Today	mỳy nìi	ມື້ນີ້
Tomorrow	mỳy-ỹyn	ມື້ອື່ນ
City	mýaŋ	ເມືອງ
Vientiane	wíaŋ-can	ວຽງຈັນ
Luang Prabang	lǔaŋ-phā-baaŋ	ຫລວງພຣະບາງ
House	hýan	ເຮືອ

From nine to five-thirty.	tēε kàw móoŋ hǎa hâa móoŋ khəŋ.	ແຕ່ເກົ້າໂມງຫ້າໂມງເຄິ່ງ.
From Monday through Friday.	tēε wán-can hǎa wán-súk.	ແຕ່ວັນຈ ຫາວັນສຸກ.
From morning to dark.	tēε sàw hǎa khām.	ແຕ່ເຊົ້າຫາຄ່ຳ.
From today to tomorrow.	tēε mỳy nìi hǎa mỳy-ỹyn.	ແຕ່ມື້ນີ້ຫາມື້ອື່ນ.
From the city of Vientiane to Luang Prabang.	tēε mýaŋ wíaŋ-can hǎa mýaŋ lǔaŋ-phā-baaŋ	ແຕ່ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ ຫາເມືອງຫລວງພຣະບາງ.
From my house to yours.	tēε hýan khôj hǎa hýan càw.	ແຕ່ເຮືອຂ້ອຍຫາເຮືອເຈົ້າ.

M-2

Where (question)	sǎj	ໃສ
Day	mỳy	ມື້
Which (question)	daj	ໃດ
Time	wée-láa	ເວລາ
When (question)	wée-láa daj	ເວລາໃດ
Clock, watch, o'clock	móoŋ	ໂມງ
From	câak	ຈາກ
Reach, get to	thǎŋ	ເຖິງ

From where to where?	tēε sǎj hǎa sǎj?	ແຕ່ໃສຫາໃສ?
From what day to what day?	tēε mỳy daj hǎa mỳy daj?	ແຕ່ມື້ໃດຫາມື້ໃດ?
From when to when?	tēε wée-láa daj hǎa wée-láa daj?	ແຕ່ເວລາໃດຫາເວລາໃດ?
From what time to what time?	tēε cák móoŋ hǎa cák móoŋ?	ແຕ່ຈັກໂມງຫາຈັກໂມງ?
From where to where?	câak sǎj thǎŋ sǎj?	ຈາກໃສເຖິງໃສ?

M-3

Drive	kháp	ຂັບ
Car	lōt	ລົດ
Ride	khīi	ຂີ່
Airplane	hýa-bin	ເຮືອບິ
Inter-city bus	lōt dooj-săan	ລົດໂດຍສາ
Make a trip	døen-tháan	ເດີ ທາງ

He is going to drive from Vientiane to Luang Prabang	láaw si kháp lōt tēe cáak wían can paj lǔan phā baan	ລາວຊື່ຂັບລົດ ແຕ່-ຈາກ-ວຽງຈັນໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ
He is going to fly from Vientiane to Luang Prabang	láaw si khīi hýa bin tēe cáak wían can paj lǔan phā baan	ລາວຊື່ເຮືອບິນ ແຕ່-ຈາກ-ວຽງຈັນໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ
He is going to take a city bus from Vientiane to Luang Prabang	láaw si khīi lōt dooj sǎan tēe cáak wían can paj lǔan phā baan	ລາວຊື່ຂີ່ລົດໂດຍສານ ແຕ່-ຈາກ ວຽງຈັນ ໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ
He is going to take a trip from Vientiane to Luang Prabang	láaw si døen thán tēe cáak wían can paj lǔan phā baan	ລາວຊື່ເດີນທາງ ແຕ່-ຈາກ ວຽງຈັນ ໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ

M-4

Reach, get to	hòot	ຮອດ
Build	sâaη	ສ້າງ
Mend, repair, restore	sôm-sém	ສ້ອມແຂ່ງ
Pile up, head up	phúun	ພູ

They will build the road from this village to that one

phēn cá sâaη thā nǎn
câak tēe bàan nǐi paj
thěη hǎa hòot bàan nàan

ພິ່ນຈະສ້າງຖະໜົນ ຈາກ-ແຕ່
ບ້ານນີ້ໄປ ເຖິງ ຫາ-ຮອດ ບ້ານນັ້ນ

They will repair the road from this village to that one

phēn cá sôm-sém thā nǎn
câak tēe bàan nǐi paj
thěη hǎa hòot bàan nàan

ພິ່ນຈະສ້ອມແຂ່ງຖະໜົນ ຈາກ-ແຕ່
ບ້ານນີ້ໄປ ເຖິງ ຫາ-ຮອດ ບ້ານນັ້ນ

They are going to raise the level of the road from this village to that one

phēn cá phúunthā nǎn
câak tēe bàan nǐi paj
thěη hǎa hòot bàan nàan

ພິ່ນຈະພູນຖະໜົນ ຈາກ-ແຕ່
ບ້ານນີ້ໄປ ເຖິງ ຫາ-ຮອດ ບ້ານນັ້ນ

M-5

Drive a car	kháp lōt	ຂັບລົດ
Age	aa-njū?	ອາຍຸ
Live with	jūu nám	ຢູ່ນຳ
Wait for	thâa	ຖາ
Go home, return	mýa bàan	ເມືອບ້າ
Try, attempt	phā-njāa-njāam	ພະຍາຍາມ
Last, final	sút thàaj	ສຸດທ້າຍ

I will drive until I get to Luang Prabang. khôj si kháp lōt con hòot thěṅ lǔaṅ phā baan ຂ້ອຍຊີຂັບລົດໄປຈົນ ຮອດ-ເຖິງ ຫຼວງພະບາງ

He lived with his parents until he reached the age of 21. láaw jūu nám phōw mée con hòot thěṅ aa njū láaw dàj sáaw ét pii ລາວຢູ່ນຳພໍ່ແມ່ລາວຈົນ ຮອດ-ເຖິງ ອາຍຸລາວໄດ້ຊາວເອັດປີ

I'll wait for him until it's time to go home. khôj si thâa láaw con hòot thěṅ wée láa mýa bàan ຂ້ອຍຊີຖ້າລາວຈົນ ຮອດ-ເຖິງ ເວລາເມືອບ້າ

I'll keep trying until the last day khôj si phā njāa njāam con hòot thěṅ mỳy sút thàaj ຂ້ອຍຊີພະຍາຍາມໄປຈົນ ຮອດ-ເຖິງ ມື້ສຸດທ້າຍ

C-1

- A. He drove from where to where? A. láaw kháp lōt tēε sǎj hǎa sǎj?
- B. He drove from his house to his office. B. láaw kháp lōt tēε hýan láaw hǎa hóoŋ-kaan láaw.

C-2

- A. You will be here from what day to what day ? A. càw si jūu nìi tēε mỳy daj hǎa mỳy daj?
- B. I will be here from Monday to Sunday. A. khōj si jūu nìi tēε mỳy wán-can hǎa mỳy wán-aa-thīt.

C-3

- A. You are going to drive from Vientiane to where ? A. càw si kháp lōt cáak wían-can paj thǎŋ sǎj?
- B. I'm going to drive from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang. B. khōj si kháp lōt cáak wían-can paj thǎŋ lǔan-phā-baan.
- A. Then what will you do? A. lèεw càw si hēt njǎŋ?
- B. I'm going to fly from Luang Phrabang to Muangsing. B. khōj si khīi hýa-bin cáak lǔan-phā-baan paj mýan-sǐŋ

C-4

- A. Until what time are you going to wait for him? A. càw si thāa láaw con thǎŋ cák móoŋ?
- B. I'll wait for him until twelve o'clock. B. khōj si thāa láaw con thǎŋ síp sǒwŋ móoŋ.

ຫລັງຈາກກາ ຝຶກຫັດຈີ ລຸ່ງ ດີແລ້ວ ລອງຖາມັກຮຽ ເບິ່ງດູ! ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະຮຽ ພາສາລາວ ໄປຮອດເດືອ ໃດ? ຫລືວ່າ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຈະຮຽ ພາສາລາວ ແຕ່ເດືອ ໃດໄປຫາເດືອ ໃດ? ແລະ ມີ່່ງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຮຽ ແຕ່ຈັກໂມງຫາຈັກໂມງ? ຈົ່ງປະ ດິດ ເລື້ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນຕື່ມອີກ ເບິ່ງດູ! ຖ້າຫາກທ່າ ແຕ່ງເລື້ອງ ທີ່ເປັນທ້າສີ ໃຈ ມີ ກໍຈະຊ່ອຍັກຮຽ ໄດ້ຫລາຍ ທີ່ສຸດ. ເລື້ອງ ທີ່ແຕ່ງຂຶ້ນ ກໍຄວ ພະຍາຍາມໃຫ້ມີ ເຫມາະສົມກັບວຽກງາ ອັ ແທ້ຈິງ ຂອງັກຮຽ , ເບີ ຕີ່ ວ່າ: ສຳ ລັບພວກ ທີ່ເປັນນັກການທູດ, ທ່າ ກໍຄວ ແຕ່ງເລື້ອງ ທີ່ກ່ຽວກັບ ວຽກບ້າ ກາ ເມືອງ; ຖ້າຫາກເຂົາເຈົ້າເບີ ພັດ ທະ າກອ ກໍຈົ່ງແຕ່ງເລື້ອງກ່ຽວກັບກາ ປູກຝັງ ແລະ ລ້ຽງສັດ, ແລະ ດ້ານການສ້າງສາຕ່າງໆ, ດັ່ງນີ້ ເປັນຕົ້ນ.

NOTES

In Lao there are several ways to refer to an extent of space or period of time that is bounded in both ends.

- 1) tēε ... hǎa is used if 'static' space or duration of time is referred to:

tēε mýaŋ wíaŋ-can hǎa mýaŋ 'From Vientiane to Luang-phabang
lǔaŋ-baŋ

tēε kàw móoŋ sàw hǎa hâa móoŋ khēŋ 'from 9:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m.

- 2) If emphasis is on motion between two points in space,
câak / tēε... paj [hǎa] is used.

láaw si khá-lôt { câak wíaŋ-can paj hǎa lǔaŋ-phā-baŋ
tēε

'He will drive from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.'

Frequently the means of transportation is indicated in constructions of this type
(khīi hýa, etc.).

- 3) If emphasis is on reaching a certain limit or goal. thěŋ 'to reach', hǎa 'to or towards',
or hòt 'to arrive at' may be used:

phēn cá sâaŋ thā-nôn { câak bàan nìi paj { thěŋ
tēε bàan nàn hǎa bàan nàn
hòt

'They will build a road from this village to that village'

The reference is usually to a known goal or limit.

- 4) con ... { hòt is used to indicate that some activity will proceed only until
thěŋ a certain limit is reached. It may not be known when that limit will be reached.

khôj si thâa láaw con { hòt wée-láa mýa bàan
thěŋ

'I will wait for her until it's time to go home. (but no longer)'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) khá-càw hían ___ kàw móon sàw ___ bāaj sīi móon
(They study from 9.00 a.m.to 4.00 p.m)
- (b) jūu mýan améelikaa khón sūan màak hēt-kaan tēε _____
hǎa _____?
(In America most people work from what day to what day?)
- (c) _____ tēε wían-can hǎa lǔan phrā-baan kin wée-láa _____
(It takes one hour to fly from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.)
- (d) càw dàj hían pháa-sǎa láaw _____ bót-hían daj _____ bót-hían daj ?
(You studied Lao from what lesson to what lesson?)
- (e) càw si kháp-lōt ___ wían-can ___ pāak-sée boo, lýy wāa
càw si khīi hýa paj?
(Are you going to drive a car or go by boat from Vientiane to Pakse?)
- (f) phùak khón ciin cá sǎan thá-nǎn tēε mýan khá-càw paj _____
mýan daj?
(The Chinese are going to build a road from their city to what city?)
- (g) _____ wían-can _____ mýan phoon-hoon míi hók síp kii-lóo-mēt
(It is 60 kilometers from Vientiane to Phonhong.)
- (h) khón a-mée-lī-kan baan khón jūu nám phōo-mée khá-càw _____
aa-njū dàj sáaw-ét pii.
(Some Americans live with their parents up to age 21.)
- (i) khá-càw si nǎn lín jūu nìi _____ wée-láa mýa bàn.
(They will sit here playing until it's time to go home.(and no longer).'
- (j) khá-càw si _____ phāk jūu mýan nìi _____ sǎon aa-thīt.
(They won't stay in this town as long as 2 weeks.)

Answers: (a) tēε ... hǎa (b) mýy daj ... mýy daj
(c) khīi hýa-bin ... nýn sūa-moon (d) tēε ... hǎa
(e) câak/tēε ... paj (f) hòot/thěj (g) tēε/câak ... paj hǎa
(h) con hòot/thěj (i) con hòot/thěj (j) bōo thěj

Cycle 59

M-1

Stomach ache	cép thòᵛᵇ	ເຈັບທ້ອງ
A headache	cép / púat hũa	ເຈັບຫົວ / ປວດຫົວ
To have fever	pen khâj	ເປັ ໄຂ້
To have a cold	pen wát	ເປັ ຫວັດ
To have diarrhea	thôok thòᵛᵇ	ຖອກທ້ອງ
To have a cough	pen aj	ເປັ ໄອ
To be dizzy	wín hũa	ວິ ຫົວ

He has stomach ache.	láaw cęp thòᵛᵇ.	ລາວເຈັບທ້ອງ.
He has a headache.	láaw púat hũa.	ລາວປວດຫົວ.
He has a fever.	láaw pen khâj.	ລາວເປັ ໄຂ້.
He has a cold.	láaw pen wát.	ລາວເປັ ຫວັດ.
He has diarrhea.	láaw thôok thòᵛᵇ.	ລາວຖອກທ້ອງ.
He has a cough.	láaw pen aj.	ລາວເປັ ໄອ.
He is dizzy.	láaw wín hũa.	ລາວວິ ຫົວ.

M-2

What's wrong?	pen njǎŋ?	ເປັນຫຍັງ?
Sick	bōw sá-baaŋ	ບໍ່ສະບາຍ
Getting better	kháj khÿn	ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນ
Condition	aa-kaan	ອາກາ
Very sick	bōw sá-baaŋ lǎaj	ບໍ່ສະບາຍຫລາຍ
Recover	hǎaj, sáw	ຫາຍ, ເຊົາ

What's wrong with him?	láaw pen njǎŋ?	ລາວເປັນຫຍັງ?
Is he sick?	láaw bōw sá-baaŋ bōw?	ລາວບໍ່ສະບາຍບໍ?
Is he getting better?	láaw kháj [khÿn] dēɛ lèɛw bōw?	ລາວໄດ້ຂຶ້ນແດ່ແລ້ວບໍ?
How is his condition?	aa-kaan khǒwŋ láaw pen nɛɛw-daj?	ອາກາ ຂອງລາວ ເປັນ ແນວໃດ?
Is he very sick?	láaw bōw sá-baaŋ lǎaj bōw?	ລາວບໍ່ສະບາຍຫລາຍບໍ?
Has he recovered?	láaw hǎaj lèɛw bōw?	ລາວຫາຍແລ້ວບໍ?
Has he recovered?	láaw sáw lèɛw bōw?	ລາວເຊົາແລ້ວບໍ?

M-3

Not very serious.	bōw hāj h́eɲ paan-daj.	ບໍ່ຮ້າຍແຮງປາ ໃດ!
Very serious!	hāj h́eɲ lāj.	ຮ້າຍແຮງຫລາຍ!
A little better!	dii khýn dēɛ lèɛw.	ດີຂຶ້ນແດ່ແລ້ວ!
Much better!	dii khýn lāj lèɛw.	ດີຂຶ້ນຫລາຍແລ້ວ!
Worse than before!	sūt sóom lón kwāa kāw.	ຊຸດໂຊມລົງກວ່າເກົ່າ
Still the same!	phów paan kāw.	ພໍປາ ເກົ່າ

C-1

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| A. What's wrong with you? | A. c̀aw pen njǎŋ? |
| B. I have a stomach ache. | B. khôj cép thòwŋ. |

C-2

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| A. Is he sick? | A. láaw bōw sá-baaŋ bōw? |
| B. Yes, he is sick, he has a cough. | B. mēɛn lèɛw, láaw bōw sá-baaŋ, láaw pen aj. |

ໃຫ້ກຮຽນ ສົມມຸດເອົາເບິ່ງດູ່ວ່າ ລາວໄປຢັ້ງມຢາມເພື່ອນຄື ັງ ທີ່ກຳລັງນອນຮັກສາໂຕຢູ່ໂຮງໝໍ. ໃຫ້ກຮຽນ ອີກຄື ັງສົມມຸດວ່າ ເປັ ຄື ເຈັບ ແລ້ວຖາມ- ຕອບ ກ່ຽວກັບອາກາ ຂອງລາວ.

NOTES

- 1) c̀ép means 'to hurt'. It is used to refer to the feeling one has right after an injury; hence it is usually temporary. p̀uat means 'to ache'. It normally refers to a more lasting sensation than c̀ép. c̀ép h́úa would refer to a bump on the head, where as, p̀uat h́úa would refer to the 'headache' that might come from the bump. In some cases the above distinction doesn't exist and c̀ép is one kind of painful sensation and p̀uat is another.
- 2) pen + name of disease may also be used to indicate what particular ailment one has, such as láaw pen wát 'He has a cold.' tít wát means 'to catch cold.'
- 3) wín 'to be dizzy' may be followed by h́úa 'head'. wín h́úa means 'to be dizzy (in the head)'. th̀wòk means 'to pour out (as with liquids, etc.)' When th̀wòk occurs with th̀wòwŋ it means 'dysentery, diarrhea'.

4) Either of the following may be used interchangeably to inquire about the health of a person:

láaw pen njǎŋ ? 'What's wrong with him?'

láaw bōo sá-baaŋ bōo? 'Is he sick?'

aa-kaan khǒŋ láaw pen néew-daj ? 'How is his condition?'

To inquire whether a person's sickness is subsiding:

láaw kháj [khÿn] dεε lεew bōo? 'Is he getting better?'

láaw háaj [sáw] lεew bōo? 'Has she recovered?'

5) khÿn 'up, go up' and lón 'down, go down' are both used after stative verbs to indicate a situation that is in process of change khÿn indicates an 'upward' change (dii khÿn 'getting better'); whereas, lón indicates a 'downward' change (sūt sóom lón 'becoming worse, worsening'.) kwāa kāw (lit. 'Than old') 'than before' may occur after lón or khÿn. phóo paan kāw (lit. equal in extent to old) 'still the same' is used to refer to conditions that have not undergone change.

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences according to the English;
- (a) láaw _____ thòṅ (He has a stomach ache.)
 - (b) khôj ____ sá-baaj _____ (I'm very sick.)
 - (c) _____ (The situation hasn't changed.)
 - (d) càw _____ (What's the matter with you?)
 - (e) láaw _____ aj _____ (Does he have a cough?)
 - (f) _____ khâj-wát. (He has flu.)
 - (g) láaw hǎaj lèew bōo? _____ (Has he recovered yet? Not yet.)
 - (h) khôj pûat hǎa lǎaj _____ (My head hurts worse than before.)
 - (i) láaw _____ thòṅ (He doesn't have a stomach ache.)
 - (j) láaw máa hēt kaan bōo dàj phō-wāa láaw cép _____
(He couldn't come to work because he had a bad stomach ache.)
 - (k) wée-láa háw bōo sá-baaj háw khúan cá _____
(When we aren't well, we should go to the doctor's)
 - (l) thāan mǎo bōok wāa láaw _____, láaw âat ca? tōṅ paj
nóon jūu hóṅmǎo.
(The doctor said he was very sick. He may have to go to the hospital.)
 - (m) háw bōo khúan paj jūu kàj khón thīi _____ phō-wāa háw âat cá

(We shouldn't go stay with people who have colds because we might catch cold.)
 - (n) mỳ wáan nìi pûat hǎa tēe wāa láaw bōo phāk phōon, mỳ nìi.
aakaan khǎṅ láaw _____.
(Yesterday he had a headache but he didn't rest. Today his condition has become much more serious.)

Answers: (a) cép (b) bōo ... lǎaj (c) phóo-paan kāw (d) pen njǎṅ
(e) pen ... bōo (f) láaw pen (g) njǎṅ (bōo hǎaj) (h) kwāa kāw
(i) bōo cép (j) thòṅ lǎaj (k) paj hǎa mǎo (l) bōo sá-baaj lǎaj
(m) pen-wát (n) hàaj-héṅ khỳn

Cycle 60

M-1

Come to work	máa kaan	ມາກາ
Question, ask	thăam	ຖາມ
Answer	tôop	ຕອບ
Take a rest	phāk-phōon	ພັກຜ່ອ
Eat	kin	ກິ
Get to go	dàj paj	ໄດ້ໄປ

Why doesn't he come to work?	pen njǎn láaw c̄ȳn bōo máa kaan?	ເປັນັ້ງລາວຈຶ່ງບໍ່ມາກາ ?
Why did he ask?	pen njǎn láaw c̄ȳn tdàj hăam?	ເປັນັ້ງລາວຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຖາມ?
Why doesn't he answer?	pen njǎn láaw c̄ȳn bōo tōop?	ເປັນັ້ງລາວຈຶ່ງບໍ່ຕອບ?
Why doesn't he take a rest?	pen njǎn láaw c̄ȳn bōo dāj phāk-phōon?	ເປັນັ້ງລາວຈຶ່ງບໍ່ໄດ້ພັກຜ່ອ ?
Why did he eat (it)	pen njǎn láaw c̄ȳn dāj kin?	ເປັນັ້ງລາວຈຶ່ງໄດ້ກິ ?
Why didn't he get to go?	pen njǎn láaw c̄ȳn bōo dāj paj?	ເປັນັ້ງລາວຈຶ່ງບໍ່ໄດ້ໄປ?

M-2

Sick	bōo sá-baaǰ	ບໍ່ສະບາຍ
Understand	khâwcaǰ	ເຂົ້າໃຈ
Know	hùu	ຮູ້
Have time	míi wée-láa	ມີເວລາ
To be hungry	hǐw	ຫິວ
Come late	máa sàa	ມາຊ້າ

Because he is sick.	phō-wāa láaw bōo sá-baaǰ.	ເພາະວ່າລາວບໍ່ສະບາຍ.
Because he doesn't understand.	phō-wāa láaw bōo khâwcaǰ.	ເພາະວ່າລາວບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈ.
Because he didn't know.	phō-wāa láaw bōo dàǰ hùu.	ເພາະວ່າລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.
Because he doesn't have time.	phō-wāa láaw bōo míi wée-láa.	ເພາະວ່າລາວບໍ່ມີເວລາ.
Because he is hungry.	phō-wāa láaw hǐw.	ເພາະວ່າລາວຫິວ.
Because he comes late.	phō-wāa láaw máa sàa.	ເພາະວ່າລາວມາຊ້າ.

M-3

Buy	sỳy	ຊື້
New	māj	ໃໝ່
Have	míi	ມີ
Sell	khǎaj	ຂາຍ
Old	kāw	ເກົ່າ
Pick, get, take	aw	ເອົາ
Wife	mía	ເມຍ
Get married	tēɛŋ-ŋáan	ແຕ່ງງາ
Travel	døen-tháan	ເດີ ທາງ

He bought an new car because he has a lot of money. láaw dàj sỳy lōt māj phō-wāa ລາວໄດ້ຊື້ລົດໃໝ່ເພາະວ່າ
 because he has a lot of money. láaw míi ŋón lǎaj. ລາວມີເງິ ຫລາຍ.

He bought a new car because he has sold his old car. láaw dàj khǎaj lōt kāw láaw. ລາວຊື້ລົດໃໝ່ເພາະວ່າ
 he has sold his old car. ລາວໄດ້ຂາຍ ລົດເກົ່າລາວ.

He bought a new car because he is getting married. láaw si tēɛŋ-ŋáan. ລາວໄດ້ຊື້ລົດໃໝ່ເພາະວ່າ
 he is getting married. ລາວຊື້ແຕ່ງງາ .

He bought a new car because he is going make a trip. láaw si døen-tháan. ລາວຊື້ລົດໃໝ່ເພາະວ່າ
 he is going make a trip. ລາວຊື້ເດີ ທາງ.

C-1

- A. Why didn't he come to work?
- B. Because he is sick.

- A. pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bōo máa kaan?
- B. phō-wāa láaw bōo sá-baaj.

C-2

- A. Why did he buy a new car?
- B. He bought a new car because he is getting married.

- A. pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ sŷy lōt māj?
- B. láaw sŷy lōt māj phō-wāa láaw si aw mía.

C-3

- A. What did he do?
- B. He took a vacation.
- A. Why did he take a vacation?
- B. He took a vacation because he had the time.

- A. láaw hēt njǎŋ?
- B. láaw phāk-phōon.
- A. pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ phāk-phōon?
- B. láaw phāk-phōon phō-wāa láaw míi wée-láa.

ຈົ່ງຕັ້ງປັ ຫາສົມມຸດຂຶ້ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ ກຽງ ສັຖາມ ແລະ ໂຕ້ວາທົກ ເບິ່ງດູ່ ວ່າ: ເປັ- ຫຍັງ, ຫລື ດ້ວຍເຫດໃດ ເຫດກາ ແ ວໃດແ ວ່າ ຈົ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນ ຫລື ຈົ່ງ-ເປັ- ໄປໃ ຫໍ ອງຕ່າງໆ?

NOTES

1) The word order in the pen njǎŋ type of question is:

pen njǎŋ + NP + cŷŋ + VP

pen njǎŋ + láaw + cŷŋ + bōo kin

(why he then not eat)

'Why didn't he eat?'

2) pen njǎŋ is always in sentence initial position, hēt njǎŋ 'Why, for what purpose' always comes after the MV in the sentence. láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu hān tát phǒm?

3) The usual response to pen njǎŋ + Sentence is phō-wāa + Sentence:

Q: pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bōo máa hēt-kaan? 'Why didn't he come to work?'

A: phō-wāa láaw bōo sá-baaj. 'Because he was ill.'

cŷŋ never occurs in responses with phō-wāa.

In highly stylized spoken or written language the question may be answered as follows:

Q: pen njǎŋ láaw c̄yŋ bōo máa hēt-kaan? 'Why didn't he come to work?'

A: láaw bōo sá-baaj láaw c̄yŋ bōo 'He was ill; he, therefore,
máa hēt-kaan. didn't come to work.'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) m̄ȳ n̄i _____láaw c̄yŋ bōo máa hóoŋ-hían?
(Why didn't he come to school today?)
- (b) láaw bōo tōop khám thǎam khá-càw_____ láaw bōo
hūu khám tōop.
(He didn't answer their question because he didn't know the answer.)
- (c) láaw bōo jâak míi mía láaw_____ bōo tēeŋ-ŋáan.
(He doesn't want a wife, so he hasn't got married.)
- (d) láaw bōo thâa khá-càw phō-wāa láaw _____mēen bōo?
(He didn't wait for them, because he didn't have much time, is that so?)
- (e) thâa-wāa láaw míi ŋén lǎaj _____si s̄ȳ lōt māj.
(If he had a lot of money, he'd buy a new car.)
- (f) _____ láaw _____thǎam hǎa khá-càw?
(Why did ask for them?)
- (g) lōt khán nàn lēen bōo dii paan-daj láaw c̄yŋ _____.
(That car doesn't run very well, so he's selling it cheap.)
- (h) khá-càw hēt wìak _____khá-càw c̄yŋ bōo phāk-phōon.
(Their work is not yet finished, so they are not resting)
- (i) láaw kin-khâw lèew _____bōo h̄iw.
(He's already eaten, so he isn't hungry.)
- (j) _____càw c̄yŋ bōo bōok láaw, càw bōo jâak hâj láaw hùu bōo?
(Why didn't you tell him? Didn't you want him to know?)

Answers: (a) pen njǎŋ (b) phō-wāa (c) c̄yŋ (d) bōo míi wée-láa lǎaj
(e) láaw c̄yŋ (f) pen-njǎŋ ... c̄yŋ (g) khǎaj th̄ȳk (h) njǎŋ bōo lèew
(i) láaw c̄yŋ (j) pen-njǎŋ

Cycle 61

M-1

Pity	ii-duu-ton	ອິດູຕີ
Love	hāk	ຮັກ
Afraid	jàan	ຢ້າ
Empathize	hě̃n caj	ເຫ້ ໃຈ
Feel bashful	aaj	ອາຍ
Dislike, hate	sán	ຊ້ງ
Have consideration for	keenj-caj	ເກງໃຈ

I pity him.	khôj ii-duu-ton láaw.	ຂ້ອຍອິດູຕີ ລາວ.
I love her.	khôj hāk náan	ຂ້ອຍຮັກນາງ.
I am afraid of him.	khôj jàan láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຢ້າ ລາວ.
I empathize with him.	khôj hě̃n caj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍເຫ້ ໃຈລາວ.
I feel bashful (in front of) him.	khôj aaj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍອາຍລາວ.
I hate him.	khôj sán láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຊ້ງລາວ.
I have consideration for him.	khôj keenj-caj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍເກງໃຈລາວ.

M-2

Young unmarried girl	phūu-sǎaw	ຜູ້ສາວ
Military officer	náaj thā-hǎan	າຍທະຫາ
Servant	khón-sàj	ຄີ ໃຊ້
Prisoner	nāk-thòot	ັກໂທດ
Beggar	khón khǎo-tháan	ຄີ ຂໍທາ
Merchant	phōw-khàa	ພໍ່ຄ້າ
Doctor	thāan mǎw	ທ່າ ຫມໍ

What kind of feelings do you have towards this young unmarried girl?	càw míi khúam-hùu-sýk néεw daj tōw phūu-sǎaw phūu nìi?	ເຈົ້າມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກແ ວໃດ ຕໍ່ ຜູ້ສາວຜູ້ນີ້?
What kind of feelings do you have towards this military officer?	càw míi khúam-hùu-sýk néεw daj tōw náaj thā-hǎan phūu nìi?	ເຈົ້າມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກແ ວໃດ ຕໍ່ າຍທະຫາ ຜູ້ນີ້?
What kind of feelings do you have towards this servant?	càw míi khúam-hùu-sýk néεw daj tōw khón-sàj phūu nìi?	ເຈົ້າມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກແ ວໃດ ຕໍ່ ຄີ ໃຊ້ຜູ້ນີ້?
What kind of feelings do you have towards this merchant?	càw míi khúam-hùu-sýk néεw daj tōw phōw-khàa phūu nìi?	ເຈົ້າມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກ ແ ວໃດ ຕໍ່ ພໍ່ຄ້າຜູ້ນີ້?
What kind of feelings do you have towards this doctor?	càw míi khúam-hùu-sýk néεw daj tōw thāan mǎw phūu nìi?	ເຈົ້າມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກ ແ ວໃດ ຕໍ່ ທ່າ ຫມໍຜູ້ນີ້?

C-1

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. Don't you empathize with him? | A. càw bōw hěn caj láaw bōw? |
| B. I empathize with him. | B. khôj hěn caj láaw. |

C-2

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. What kind of feelings do you have towards this merchant ? | A. càw míi khúam-hùu-sýk néεwdaj
tōw phōw-khàa phūu nìi? |
| B. I have a feeling of empathy with him. | B. khôj míi khúam-hùu-sýk hěncaj
láaw. |

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ ກຽ ເລົ່າເລື່ອງຂອງບຸກຄົນ ຕ່າງໆ ທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກດີ – ແລະໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າບອກເຖິງຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກ ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ ທີ່ມີ ຕໍ່ແຕ່ລະບຸກຄົນ ເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດຜົນ ຢ່າງໃດຈົ່ງເປັນ ຢ່າງນັ້ນ.

NOTES

1) Verbs of Emotion may be:

(a) Transitive Verb:

khôj hāk láaw 'I love her.'

càw sǎŋ khôj boo? 'Do you hate me?'

(b) Stative Verbs:

láaw aaj càw. (She is shy of you) 'Your presence causes her to be shy.'

(c) Or compounds with -caj 'heart, soul, spirit.'

khôj hěn-caj láaw. 'I empathize with him'. (I associate my self with his feelings.)

khôj keen-caj láaw. 'I have consideration for his feelings.'

keen-caj may be used in the negative jāa keen-caj with the meaning 'Don't be afraid of imposing on me (by making a request, etc.)'

2) khwáam is a noun formative (like -ness in English). Noun Compounds with khwáam as the head of the compound are Abstract Nouns, khwáam hùu-sýk 'feeling', khwáam hāk 'love', kháam hěn-caj 'empathy', khwáam-aaj 'bashfulness', khwáam pen-hūaŋ 'concern', etc...

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) phùak khôj _____ láaw phō-wāa láaw pen khón khīi khàan.
(We don't pity him because he is a lazy person.)

(b) khá-càw si tēeŋ-ŋaan kan dyan nāa phō-wāa khá-càw _____
māa sǒwŋ pii lèew.
(They'll get married next month since they have been in love for 2 _____ years.)

- (c) láaw bōo míi _____ njǎŋ _____ khá-càw.
(He doesn't have any feelings toward them.)
- (d) ph̄yan láaw _____ láaw tēε khá-càw sōoj njǎŋ láaw bōo dàj.
(His friends empathize with him but they can't help him any)
- (e) láaw aw lōt khōj paj sàj dooj bōo _____.
(He took my car and used it without considering me.)
- (f) _____ bōo nāp-th̄yy náaj khōŋ khá-càw.
(Some servants don't respect their bosses.)
- (g) náaj th̄ii dii cá tōŋ _____ khón khōŋ láaw.
(A boss that is good must love and empathize with his people.)
- (h) láaw bōok wāa láaw _____ phō-khàa th̄ii bōo sát-s̄yy.
(He said he dislikes merchants that are not honest.)
- (i) láaw _____ wāa khōj cá hēt hāj láaw _____.
(He's afraid I will make him shy.)
- (j) phēn bōok bōo hāj láaw aaj _____ phēn pen thāan mōo.
(He told her not to be shy because he is a doctor.)

2. Express how you feel about the following: (a) The President (b) the Lao people
(c) dogs (d) your wife or sister (e) your children (f) dishonest people (g) your religion
(h) meeting strangers

Answers: 1(a) bōo ii-duu-ton (b) hāk kan (c) khwáam hùu-s̄yk tōo
(d) hěn caj (e) keeŋ-caj khōj (f) khón-sàj baaj khón
(g) hāk lē hěn-caj (h) sát (i) jàan ... aaj (j) phō-wāa 2Your answers
will depend on how you feel about each of these.

Cycle 62

M-1

Think	khīt	ຄິດ
Know	hùu	ຮູ້
Understand	khâw-caj	ເຂົ້າໃຈ
Hear	dàj-njín	ໄດ້ຍິນ
Say, speak	wàw	ເວົ້າ
Tell	bôok	ບອກ

I think he didn't know.	khôj khīt wāa láaw bōo dàj hùu.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.
I know she didn't know.	khôj hùu wāa láaw bōo dàj hùu.	ຂ້ອຍຮູ້ວ່າ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.
I understood he didn't know.	khôj dàj khâw-caj wāa láaw bōo dàj hùu.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ເຂົ້າໃຈວ່າ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.
I heard he didn't know.	khôj dàj njín wāa láaw bōo dàj hùu.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຍິນ ວ່າ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.
I said he didn't know.	khôj dàj wàw wāa láaw bōo dàj hùu.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ເວົ້າວ່າ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.
I told he didn't know.	khôj dàj bôok wāa láaw bōo dàj hùu.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ບອກວ່າ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮູ້.

M-2

Believe	s̄ya	ເຊື່ອ
Answer	tōp	ຕອບ
To question	thăam	ຖາມ
Feel	hùu-sýk	ຮູ້ສຶກ
Suspect	sǒṅ-sǎj	ສົງໄສ
Predict, guess	thwáaj	ທວາຍ

How do you believe?	càw s̄ya wā jāaṅ daj?	ເຈົ້າເຊື່ອວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?
How did you answer?	càw dàj tōp wā jāaṅ daj?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ຕອບວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?
How did you ask?	càw dàj thăam wā jāaṅ daj?	ເຈົ້າ ໄດ້ຖາມວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?
How did you suspect?	càw dàj sǒṅ-sǎj wā jāaṅ daj?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ ສົງໄສວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?
How did you predict?	càw dàj thwáaj wā jāaṅ daj?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ ທວາຍວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?

M-3

Story, matter	lyəŋ	ເລື້ອງ
City	mýaŋ	ເມືອງ
Politics	kaan mýaŋ	ກາ ເມືອງ
War	sǎŋ-kháam	ສົງຄາມ
Grow, raise; rice	púuk, khâw	ປູກ, ເຂົ້າ
Feed, nourish; raise	liəŋ, sát	ລ້ຽງ, ສັດ

Politicians know about politics.	nāk kaan mýaŋ hùu lyəŋ kaan mýaŋ.	ນັກກາ ເມືອງຮູ້ເລື້ອງກາ ເມືອງ.
The military know about war.	thā-hǎan hùu lyəŋ sǎŋ-kháam.	ທະຫາ ຮູ້ເລື້ອງສົງຄາມ.
Farmers know about growing rice.	sáaw náa hùu lyəŋ púuk khâw.	ຊາວ າຮູ້ເລື້ອງປູກເຂົ້າ.
Farmers know about raising animals.	sáaw ká-sí-koon hùu lyəŋ kaan liəŋ-sát.	ຊາວກະສິກອນ ຮູ້ເລື້ອງກາ ລ້ຽງສັດ.

C-1

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. Do you think he will be interested? | A. càw khīt wāa láaw si sǎn-caj bōw? |
| B. I think he will be interested. | B. khōj think wāa láaw si bōw sǎn-caj. |

C-2

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A. How did you understand it? | A. càw khâw-caj wāa jāaŋ-daj? |
| B. I think he will be interested. | B. khōj khīt wāa láaw si sǎn-caj.. |

C-3

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. What do you know? | A. càw hùu njǎŋ? |
| B. I know about Laos. | B. khōj hùu lyəŋ mýaŋ láaw. |

ບົດນີ້ມີຈຸດປະສົງ ຢາກໃຫ້ ກຽ ຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ: "ວ່າ". ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳນີ້ເວລາໃດ? ກຽ ເຂົ້າໃຈດີແລ້ວ ຫລືຍັງ?

NOTES

- 1) Verbs of saying, thinking, etc. frequently have sentences as complement; when they do, wāa occurs obligatorily as a connective;

khôj khīt wāa láaw bōo hùu 'I didn't think he knew.'

láaw hùu wāa càw bōo sá-baa j lǎaj 'He knew you were very ill.'

- 2) jāaŋ da j 'what, how, in what way' is the usual question form with sentences like those above;

Q. càw tōop wāa jāaj da j? 'What did you answers?'

A. khôj tōop wāa aw pa j pá wàj phùn. 'I said, take it over there and leave it.'

- 3) Although lỳaŋ 'story, matter' is a noun, it functions somewhat like a preposition in English when it occurs after hùu 'to know (a fact)', thus hùu lỳaŋ mýaŋ láaw (lit. know matter Laos) 'to know about Laos'.

- 4) kaan is a Noun formative. Noun compound with kaan are 'action nominals', i. e. they refer to action and correspond roughly to the -ing form of the verb as in Singing songs is fun. 'kaan pûuk khâw ': 'Growing rice'; 'kaan liaŋ-sát' 'Raising animals' etc.

- 5) khīt 'to think' is sometimes pronounced khýt.

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) khôj khīt wāa càw míi khwáam sǒn-caj _____ mýaŋ láaw.
(I thought you had some interest in Laos.)
 - (b) láaw _____ cá hēt njǎŋ dii.
(He doesn't know what he should do (what would be good to do).)
 - (c) khôj _____ pii nìi aa-hǎan cá phéŋ khÿn îik.
(I heard that food will become more expensive this year.)
 - (d) phùak nāk-hían thǎam khôj _____ jūu náj mýaŋ láaw.
(The students asked me about raising animals in Laos.)
 - (e) khôj hùu-sýk wāa láaw _____ náj lýaŋ nìi paan-daj.
(I don't feel he is very interested in this matter.)
 - (f) khá-càw _____ láaw pen thā-hǎan sá-tuu.
(They suspect he is an enemy soldier.)
 - (g) láaw hùu lýaŋ kaan mýaŋ tēε wāa láaw bōo hùu
(He knows politics but he doesn't know war.)
 - (h) _____ láaw âat cá bōo hùu lýaŋ kaan lìaŋ-sát dīi paan-daj.
(The villagers suspect that he may not know much about raising animals.)
 - (i) khôj bōo _____ thǎam láaw phō-wāa láaw bōo hùu lýaŋ nìi.
(I don't want to ask him because he doesn't know anything about this.)
 - (j) láaw _____ bōo dàj _____ láaw bōo míi wée-láa.
(He couldn't answer that he didn't have the time.)

Answers: 1(a) lýaŋ (b) bōo hùu wāa (c) dàj-njín wāa
(d) lýaŋ kaan lìaŋ-sát (e) bōo sǒŋ-saj (f) sǒŋ-sǎj wāa
(g) lýaŋ sǒŋ-kháam (h) sáaw-bàan sǒŋ-saj wāa (i) jâak
(j) tôop ... wāa

Cycle 63

M-1

Difficult, hard	njàak	ຍາກ
Convenient	sá-dúak	ສະດວກ
Confused	njún	ຫຍຸ້ງ
Complicated and difficult	njún-njàak	ຫຍຸ້ງຍາກ
Dangerous (as of environment)	kan-daan	ກັ ດາ
Free from	póot	ປອດ
Danger	pháj	ໄພ
Free from danger, safe	póot-pháj	ປອດໄພ
Luck	sòok	ໂຊກ
Good, well	dii	ດີ
Good luck	sòok dii	ໂຊກດີ

I think it's very difficult	khôj khīt wāa njàak lǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ຍາກຫລາຍ.
I think it's very convenient.	khôj khīt wāa sá-dúak lǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ສະດວກຫລາຍ.
I think it's very complicated.	khôj khīt wāa njún-njàak lǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ຫຍຸ້ງຍາກຫລາຍ.
I think it's very dangerous.	khôj khīt wāa kan-daan lǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ກັ ດາ ຫລາຍ.
I think it's very safe.	khôj khīt wāa póot-pháj lǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ປອດໄພຫລາຍ.

M-2

Difficult	njàak	ຍາກ
Convenient	sá-dûak	ສະດວກ
Clean	sá-âat	ສະອາດ
Dirty	pỳan	ເປື້ອ
Expensive	phéεη	ແພງ
Cheap	thỳyk	ຖືກ

Is it difficult?	mán njàak boວ?	ມັນຍາກບໍ?
Is it convenient?	mán sá-dûak boວ?	ມັນສະດວກບໍ?
Is it clean?	mán sá-âat boວ?	ມັນສະອາດບໍ?
Is it dirty?	mán pỳan boວ?	ມັນເປື້ອ ບໍ?
Is it expensive?	mán phéεη boວ?	ມັນແພງບໍ?
Is it cheap?	mán thỳyk boວ?	ມັນຖືກບໍ?

M-3

Help, assist	sōoj	ຊ່ອຍ
Stay (temporary)	phāk	ພັກ
Ask	khǎw	ຂໍ
Move	njàaj	ຍ້າຍ
Place	bōon	ບ່ອນ
Other	ȳyn	ອື່ນ
Be at risk	siān	ສ່ຽງ
Need	tòon-kaan	ຕ້ອງການ
Soldier	thā-hǎan	ທະຫານ
Buy	sỳy	ຊື້
More, again	îik	ອີກ
Delicious	sèep	ແຊບ

It's so difficult, he let them come help.	mán njàak lǎaj láaw cȳn hâj khá-càw máa sōoj.	ມັນ ຍາກຫລາຍ ລາວຈຶ່ງ ໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າມາຊ່ອຍ.
It's so convenient, he wants to come stay here.	mán sá-dúak lǎaj láaw cȳn jâak máa phāk jūu nìi.	ມັນ ສະດວກຫລາຍ ລາວຈຶ່ງ ຢາກມາພັກຢູ່ນີ້.
The situation is so difficult, he therefore asked to move to another place.	mán njàak lǎaj láaw cȳn khǎw njàaj paj bōon ȳyn.	ມັນ ຍາກຫລາຍ ລາວຈຶ່ງຂໍ ຍ້າຍໄປບ່ອນ ອື່ນ.
The situation is so dangerous, he doesn't risk it.	mán kan-daan lǎaj láaw cȳn bōw siān.	ມັນ ກັ ດາ ຫລາຍ ລາວຈຶ່ງບໍ່ສ່ຽງ.
The situation is so safe, he doesn't need any soldiers.	mán pōotpháj lǎaj láaw cȳn bōw tòon-kaan thā-hǎan.	ມັນ ບອດໄພຫລາຍ ລາວຈຶ່ງ ບໍ່ຕ້ອງການ ທະຫານ .
It is so delicious, he bought more.	mán sèep lǎaj láaw cȳn sỳy îik.	ມັນ ແຊບຫລາຍ ລາວຈຶ່ງຊື້ອີກ.

M-4

Task, work	wìak	ວຽກ
Receive	hāp	ຮັບ
Problem, trouble	pan-hǎa	ປັນຫາ
Life	síi-wīt	ຊີວິດ
On mountains	théng phúu	ເທິງພູ
Area	khêet	ເຂດ
Liberate	pót-pōoj	ປົດປ່ອຍ

Is this job difficult?	wìak nìi njàak boo?	ວຽກນີ້ຍາກບໍ່?
Does this hotel have all the conveniences?	hóoŋ-héem nìi míi khwáam sá-dúak lǎaj boo?	ໂຮງແຮມນີ້ ມີຄວາມສະດວກ ຫຼາຍບໍ່?
Is this problem complex?	pan-hǎa nìi njuŋ-njàak boo?	ປັນຫານີ້ ຫຍຸ້ງຍາກບໍ່?
Is life in the mountains dangerous?	síiwīt jūu théng phúu kan-daan boo?	ຊີວິດຢູ່ເທິງພູ ກັ ດາ ບໍ່ ບໍ່?
Is this liberated area safe?	khêet pót-pōoj nìi poot-pháj boo?	ເຂດປົດປ່ອຍນີ້ ບອດໄພບໍ່?
Is this food delicious?	aa-haŋan nìi sèep boo?	ອາຫານນີ້ເຊບບໍ່?

M-5

This work is so complicated and difficult, he had them come help.	wìak nìi njàak lǎaj, láaw cȳŋ hâj khá-càw máa sōwǒj.	ວຽກນີ້ ຍາກຫລາຍ, ລາວຈຶ່ງ ໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າມາຊ່ອຍ.
This hotel affords so many conveniences, he likes to stay here.	hóoŋ-héem nìi hâj khwáam sá-dûak lǎaj, láaw cȳŋ jâak máa phāk jūu nìi.	ໂຮງແຮມນີ້ ໃຫ້ຄວາມສະດວກ ຫຼາຍ, ລາວຈຶ່ງຢາກມາພັກ ຢູ່ນີ້
The work here is so complicated, he asked to move to another place.	wìak nìi njûŋ njàak lǎaj, láaw cȳŋ khǒw njàaj paj bōon ȳyn.	ວຽກນີ້ ຫຍຸ້ງຍາກຫລາຍ, ລາວ ຈຶ່ງຂໍ້ຍ້າຍໄປບ່ອ ອື່ນ.
This cake is so delicious, he'll buy some more.	khá-nǒm nìi sèep lǎaj láaw cȳŋ si sỳy îik.	ຂົນນີ້ ແຊບຫລາຍ, ລາວຈຶ່ງ ຊື້ອີກ.

C-1

- A. Is it convenient?
 B. I think it's very convenient.

- A. sá-dûak boo ?
 B. khôj khīt wāa sá-dûak lǎaj.

C-2

- A. Is this food delicious?
 B. This food is so delicious he'll buy some more.

- A. aa-hǎan nìi sèep boo ?
 B. aa-hǎan nìi sèep lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ cá s̄ȳy íik.

C-3

- A. This work is so difficult that he had them come and help, didn't he?
 B. That's right, this work is so difficult that he had them come and help.

- A. wìak nìi njàak lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ hâj khá-càw máa sōoj, mēen boo?
 B. mēen lèew, wìak nìi njàak lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ hǎj khá-càw máa sōoj.

C-4

- A. Why did he have them come to help?
 B. He had them come to help because this work is very difficult.

- A. pen njǎŋ láaw c̄ȳŋ hâj khá-càw máa sōoj?
 B. láaw hâj khá-càw máa sōoj phō-wāa wìak nìi njàak lǎaj.

NOTES

- 1) The Subject is not expressed in Lao when the reference is to a general situation, except in certain situations:

Q: kan-daan boo ? 'Is (it) dangerous?'

A: bōo kan-daan lǎaj '(It) isn't very dangerous.'

In more complex sentences mán 'it' must be used:

mán njàak lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ hâj 'It's so difficult he them come help.'
khá-càw máa sōoj

- 2) The So + Adjective + that + Sentence construction in English is expressed in Lao by:

Vs	+	<u>lǎaj</u>	+	NP (subject)	+	<u>c̄ȳŋ</u> . . .
<u>njàak</u>		<u>lǎaj</u>		<u>láaw</u>		<u>c̄ȳŋ</u>
(It is difficult		very		he		then....)
				'It's so difficult that he....'		

The such + Adjective + NP + that + S construction is expressed in Lao:

NP	+	Vs	+	lǎaj + NP (Subjective)	+	c̄ȳŋ
wìak		nāa-sǒn-caj		lǎaj lǎaw		c̄ȳŋ
work		interesting		very he		then....
		'such interesting work that he...'				

APPLICATION

- 1) Translate the following sentences into English:
- (a) lǎaw khīt wāa wìak nìi njàak lǎaj lǎaw c̄ȳŋ
jâak hâj càw sōoj lǎaw.
 - (b) khôj khôop-caj lǎaj lǎaj thīi càw hâj khwáam sá-dûak.
 - (c) lǎaw míi wìak njûŋ lǎaj lǎaw c̄ȳŋ bōo hùu wāa ca hēt njǎŋ kōon.
 - (d) khá-càw bōo jâak nāŋ kàj lǎaw phō-wāa kh̄yaŋ nūŋ lǎaw bōo sá-âat
[p̄ȳan].
 - (e) lǎaw khīt wāa lǎaw sòok dii lǎaj phō-wāa thā-hǎan sát-tuu
bōo hěn lǎaw.
 - (f) kaan hēt wìak jūu hóoŋ-kaan khôj bōo sá-dûak dii paan-daj.
 - (g) thā-hǎan bōo hâj phùak-háv paj phō-wāa tháaŋ sên nìi
bōo p̄oŋt-pháj
 - (g) thā-hǎan bōo nâj phùak-háv paj phō-wāa tháaŋ sên nìi
bōo p̄oŋt-pháj
 - (h) kaan dœen-tháaŋ jūu náj khêet nìi kan-daan lǎaj
 - (i) aa-hǎan phéεŋ phō-wāa bàn mýaŋ njûŋ-njáak
 - (j) wée-láa kaan paj máa sá-dûak thūk sīŋ thūk jāaŋ koo th̄ȳyk

Answers: 1(a) He thinks the work here is so hard that he would like have you help him. (b) I am very appreciative that you have made it convenient. (c) He had such complicated work to do that he didn't know what to do first. (d) They don't want to sit near him because his clothes are dirty. (e) He thought he was very lucky because the enemy soldiers didn't see him. (f) The work in my office is not very convenient. (g) The soldiers wouldn't let us go because this path is not safe. (h) Traveling in this area is very dangerous. (i) Food is expensive because the country is in a very precarious (difficult and dangerous) situation. (j) When going and coming are convenient everything is cheap.

Cycle 64

M-1

Believe, trust	s̄ya	ເຊື່ອ
Summarize, conclude	sá-rúp [aw]	ສະລຸບ (ເອົາ)
Hope	wǎṅ	ຫວັງ
Estimate, calculate, guess	ká	ກະ
To dream	fǎn	ຝັນ
Foretell	thám-náaj	ທຳ າຍ
To be sure, certain, confident	nēɛ-caj	ແນ່ໃຈ

You believe that he will win, is that so?	càw s̄ya wāa láaw si s̄a-nā s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າເຊື່ອວ່າ ລາວຊິຊະ ະ ຊັ້ນບໍ່?
You conclude that he will win, is that so?	càw sá-rúp aw wāa láaw si s̄a-nā s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າສະລຸບເອົາວ່າ ລາວຊິ ຊະນະຊັ້ນບໍ່?
You hope that he will win, is that so?	càw wǎṅ wāa láaw si s̄a-nā s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຫວັງວ່າ ລາວຊິຊະ ະ ຊັ້ນບໍ່?
You calculate that he will win, is that so?	càw kaʔ wāa láaw si s̄a-nā s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າກະວ່າ ລາວຊິຊະ ະ ຊັ້ນບໍ່?
You dreamed that he won is that so?	càw dàj fǎn wāa láaw dàj s̄a-nā s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ຝັນ ວ່າ ລາວໄດ້ຊະ ະ ຊັ້ນບໍ່?
You foretell that he will win, is that so?	càw thám-náaj wāa láaw si s̄a-nā s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າທຳ າຍວ່າ ລາວ ຊິຊະນະຊັ້ນບໍ່?
You are sure that he will win, is that so?	càw nēɛ-caj wāa láaw si s̄a-nā? s̄an bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າແນ່ໃຈວ່າລາວ ຊິຊະນະຊັ້ນບໍ່?

M-3

Write	khǎn	ຂງ
Cut	tát	ຕັດ
Wrap, pack	hōo	ຫໍ່
Leave, abandon	paʔ wàj	ປະໄວ້
Stack something up	aw jooŋ kan khÿn	ເອົາຢອງກັ ຂຶ້ນ
Hook	koʔ	ເກາະ
Each other	kan	ກັ

You write it like this, huh?	càw khǎn cāŋ s̀i booʔ	ເຈົ້າຂງຈັງຊີ້ບໍ່?
You cut it like this, huh?	càw tát cāŋ s̀i booʔ	ເຈົ້າ ຕັດຈັງຊີ້ບໍ່?
You pack it like this, huh?	càw hōo cāŋ s̀i booʔ	ເຈົ້າ ຫໍ່ຈັງຊີ້ບໍ່?
You leave it like this, huh?	càw paʔ wàj cāŋ s̀i booʔ	ເຈົ້າປະໄວ້ຈັງຊີ້ບໍ່?
You stack them up like this, huh?	càw aw jooŋ kan khÿn cāŋ s̀i booʔ	ເຈົ້າເອົາຢອງກັ ຂຶ້ນຈັງຊີ້ບໍ່?
You hook them together like this, huh?	càw aw koʔ kan cāŋ s̀i booʔ	ເຈົ້າເອົາເກາະກັນຈັງຊີ້ບໍ່?

M-4

Think	khīt	ຄິດ
Believe	s̄yā	ເຊື່ອ
Propose	sá-n̄ŋ̄	ສະເໜີ/ສະເໜີ
Appear	paa-kót	ປະກົດ
See	hěn	ເຫັນ
Observe, notice	saŋŋ-keet hěn	ສັງເກດເຫັນ

I think so.	khôj khīt wāa [cāŋ] sàŋ lèɛw.	ຂ້ອຍຄິດວ່າ ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນແລ້ວ.
He believes it's that way.	láaw s̄yā wāa [cāŋ] sàŋ lèɛw.	ລາວເຊື່ອວ່າ ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນແລ້ວ.
That's what he proposed.	láaw sá-n̄ŋ̄ wāa [cāŋ] sàŋ lèɛw.	ສະເໜີວ່າ ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນແລ້ວ
It appears to be so.	paa-kót wāa [cāŋ] sàŋ lèɛw.	ປາກົດວ່າ ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນແລ້ວ.
That's how I see it.	khôj hěn wāa [cāŋ] sàŋ lèɛw.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ວ່າ ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນແລ້ວ.
That's what I have noticed.	khôj dàj saŋŋ-keet hěn wāa [cāŋ] sàŋ lèɛw.	ຂ້ອຍ ໄດ້ສັງເກດເຫັນ ວ່າ ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນແລ້ວ.

C-1

- A. Do you believe he will pass the exam ? A. càw s̄ya wāa láaw si s̄əŋ dàj bōō ?
- B. Yes, I believe he will pass the exam. B. ʌʌ, khōj s̄ya wāa láaw si s̄əŋ dàj.

C-2

- A. You predict that he will get promoted, is that so ? A. càw thám-náaj wāa láaw si dàj kh̄yŋ s̄àn, s̄àn bōō?
- B. Yes, I predict that he will certainly be promoted. B. wāa s̄àn lèew, khōj thám-náaj wāa láaw si dàj kh̄yŋ s̄àn j̄āaŋ n̄ēɛ nōon.

C-3

- A. What have you concluded ? A. càw sá-rúp aw wāa j̄āaŋ daj?
- B. I concluded that he will pass the exam. B. khōj sá-rúp aw wāa láaw si s̄əŋ dàj.

C-4

- A. You believed that he wasn't coming, huh? A. càw s̄ya wāa láaw bōō máa s̄àn bōō?
- B. Yes, That's what I believed. B. ʌʌ, khōj s̄ya wāa [cāŋ] s̄àn lèew.

C-5

- A. You are going to write it like this, huh? A. càw si kh̄ian cāŋ s̄i bōō?
- B. No. I'm going to write it like that. B. bōō, khōj si kh̄ian cāŋ s̄àn.

ຈົ່ງສະແດງໃຫ້ ກຽງ ເຫັນ ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງ ລະຫວ່າງຄຳວ່າ: "ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນ" " ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນ" ມີຢ່າງໃດ?. ຄຳວ່າ: " ຊັ້ນບໍ່?" "ວ່າຊັ້ນແລ້ວ" ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຢ່າງໃດ?

NOTES

1) s̄àn 'like that' occurs with bōō after Sentences:

càw s̄ya wāa láaw si s̄ā-nā? s̄àn bōō ? 'You believe he will win, is that so ?
s̄àn bōō ? is similar in usage to m̄ēɛn bōō ? except that m̄ēɛn bōō ? is used primarily to check the truth value of statements; whereas, s̄àn bōō ? is used to check an opinion or a guess, and hence is more informal. The usual answers to s̄àn bōō? questions is wāa s̄àn lèew which means 'That's how I see it' or 'That's what I had in mind'.

2) cāŋ s̄àn 'like that' and cāŋ s̄i 'like this' are used in statements and questions relating to how something is done.

khǎn cān sī bōo ? 'You write it like this, huh?

khán sànn means 'In that case'. It is heard often in conversation.

APPLICATION

1) Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) láaw bōo hían, khōj jāan wāa láaw si sěj-tók.
- (b) khōj wǎŋ wāa sà̀n lèew.
- (c) láaw s̄ya wāa míi khwáam phā-njáa-njáam jūu sǎj khwáam sǎmrēt jūu hân.
- (d) mỳy khýyn nìi càw fǎn wāa jāaŋ daj?
- (e) khón láaw sūan lǎaj s̄ya khwáam fǎn.
- (f) háw cá sa-rúp aw bōo dàj wāa wìak láaw cá bōo sǎm-rēt.
- (g) thāa wāa fāaj n̄yŋ s̄a-nā? íik fāaj n̄yŋ koo cá tōoŋ phāaj-phùu.
- (h) láaw s̄ya wāa sáj-s̄a-nā l̄u? khwáam phāaj-phùu pen khōoŋ khūu kan.
- (i) pii kaaj nìi láaw sěj-tók láaw n̄uŋ-caj wāa pri nìi láaw si sěj dàj.
- (j) wāa sà̀n lèew khōj s̄ya wāa láaw si dàj khýn sà̀n.

Answers: 1 (a) He doesn't study. I'm afraid he'll fail the exam.

(b) I hope so.

(c) He believe that where there is striving (trying) there will be success.

(d) What did you dream last night?

(e) Most Laos believe in dreams.

(f) We cannot conclude that his work will fail.

(g) If one side wins, the other side must lose.

(h) He believes that victory and failure are pairs.

(i) Last year he failed!!!He is certain he will pass this year.

(j) Certainly, I believe he will be promoted.

CYCLE-65

M-1

He will go to the market, láaw si paj tá-lâat, lèuww
then he will go to the hospital. láaw si paj hóongmᵛᵛ.

ລາວ ຊິໄປຕຸລາດ, ແລ້ວລາວ
ຊິໄປໂຮງຫມໍ.

He will eat, then he will láaw si kinkhâw, lèuww
go to work. láaw si paj hēt kaan.

ລາວ ຊິກິ ເຂົ້າ ແລ້ວລາວ
ຊິໄປເຮັດກາ .

He will read, then he will láaw si āan nǎṅ sǎy, lèuww
go to bed. láaw si paj nóon.

ລາວຊິອ່າ ຫ້າສີ, ແລ້ວລາວ
ຊິໄປ ອ .

He will rest, then he will láaw si sáw mǎaj, lèuww
take a shower. láaw si âap nàm.

ລາວ ຊິ ເຊົາເມື່ອຍ, ແລ້ວລາວ
ຊິອາບ ຈໍ້.

M-2

Feed (animal)	kya	ເກືອ
Pig	mũu	ໝູ
Cut	tát	ຕັດ
Grass	njâa	ຫຍ້າ
Wash clothes	sāk kh̄yaŋ-nūŋ	ຊັກເຄື່ອງ ູ່ງ
Borrow	jyym	ຢືມ
Money	ŋʹn	ເງີ
Change	pīan	ປ່ຽ
Table cloth	phâa puu tó,	ຜ້າປູໂຕະ

He will feed the pigs, then what is he going to do?	láaw si kya mũu, lèuŋw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊິເກືອໝູ, ແລ້ວ ລາວຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?
He will cut the grass, then what is he going to do?	láaw si tát njâa, lèuŋw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊິຕັດຫຍ້າ, ແລ້ວ ລາວຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?
He will wash clothes, then hat is he going to do?	láaw si sāk kh̄yaŋ-nūŋ, lèuŋw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊິຊັກເຄື່ອງ ູ່ງ, ແລ້ວ ລາວຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?
He will borrow money, then what is he going to do?	láaw si jyym ŋʹn, lèuŋw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວຊິຢືມເງີ , ແລ້ວ ລາວຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?
He will change the table cloth, then what is he going to do?	láaw si pīan phâa puu tó, lèuŋw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	ລາວ ຊິປ່ຽ ຜ້າປູໂຕະ, ແລ້ວ ລາວຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?

C-1

A. What are you going to do? A. càw si hēt njǎṅ dēε?

B. I will go to eat, then I B. khôj si paj kinkhâw will
come to rest lèuṅw khôj si máa sáw m̄yaj.

C-2

A. You will read, then what A. càw si āan naṅṅ-syṅṅ
will you do? lèuṅw càw si hēt njǎṅ?

B. After reading will go feed B. āan naṅṅ-syṅṅ lèuṅw khôj
the pigs. paj kya m̄u.

ສຳລັບຄຳວ່າ: "ແລ້ວ" ຂໍ້ນີ້ ຈົ່ງພະຍາຍາມສອນແຕ່ຕາມໝາຍທີ່ໃຊ້ ບົດຝຶກຫັດນີ້ເທົ່ານີ້ເສຍ ກ່ອ ! ຈຸດປະສົງ
ກໍແມ່ ເພື່ອ ໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າເອົາເທື່ອ ລະຍ່າງ ເຂົາກໍຈົ່ງຈະຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງ ແລ້ວ ກໍຈະເກີດຄວາມ ພັ້ນໃຈ.

NOTES

1) In the construction Sđ + lèεw + § [láaw si paj tá-lâat lèεw láaw si
paj hóoṅmóo . 'He's going to the market and then to the hospital.')

lèεw is a sentence connective and there is an indication that the activity referred to in
the first sentence preceded that of the second sentence.

2) dēε in a question indicates that the questioner is expecting a multiple answer.

Q: láaw si hēt njǎṅ dēε ? What (things) is the going to do ?'

A: láaw si āan naṅṅ-syṅṅ lèεw 'He'll read a book and then go eat.'
láaw si paj kin khâw

APPLICATION

1 Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) láaw kin khâw lèew láaw si máa hǎa càw bɔɔ?
- (b) taam thám-mā-daa lǎŋ-câak càw kin khâw lèew càw māk hēt njǎŋ?
- (c) khá-càw si paj bŋŋ síi-née lèew khá-càw si paj sǎj dēɛ?
- (d) càw si kháp lōt paj sŷy sŷy lèew liaw sàaj mēɛn bɔɔ?
- (e) hían lèew cŷŋ hāk, bōɔ mēɛn hāk lèew cŷŋ hían.
- (f) thâa-wāa càw mŷaj kɔɔ phāk-phōɔn sǎa, sáw mŷaj lèew cŷŋ paj hēt wíak í ik.
- (g) mŷa háw liàŋ mŷu háw tōɔŋ kya mán hâj īim lèew háw cà dàj láa-kháa dɪi .
- (h) láaw si pīan phâa puu tó lèew láaw cá paj khúa-kin.
- (i) thâa-wāa càw jâak míi hŷan càw âat cá tōɔŋ jŷym ŋén câak thā-náa-kháan .
- (j) láaw si tát njâa lèew láaw si paj âap nàm.

CYCLE - 66

M-1

Check	kûat	ກວດ
Look at	bṽṽ	ເບິ່ງ
Wash (cloth only)	sāk khṽaṅ nūṅ	ຊ້ກເຄືອງ ູ່ງ
Translate	pṽṽ	ແປ
Write	khǎan	ຂຽ
Letter (epistle)	cót mǎaj	ຈົດໝາຍ
Send	sōṅ	ສົ່ງ
Study	sýk-sǎa	ສຶກສາ

I haven't got around to checking it yet.	khôj njáṅ bōo thán dàj kûat bṽṽ.	ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ກວດເບິ່ງ
I haven't got around to washing clothes yet.	khôj njáṅ bōo thán dàj sāk khṽaṅ nūṅ.	ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ຊ້ກເຄືອງ ູ່ງ.
I haven't got around to translating it yet.	khôj njáṅ bōo thán dàj pṽṽ.	ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ແປ.
I haven't got around to writing the letter yet.	khôj njáṅ bōo thán dàj khǎan cót mǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ຂຽ ຈົດໝາຍ.
I haven't got around to mailing the letter yet.	khôj njáṅ bōo thán dàj sōṅ cót mǎaj.	ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ສົ່ງຈົດໝາຍ.
I haven't got around to studying yet.	khôj njáṅ bōo thán dàj sýksǎa bṽṽ.	ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ສຶກສາເບິ່ງ

M-3

Yes (already came.).	máa lèuṗw.	ມາແລ້ວ.
Yes (already stopped.).	sáw lèuṗw.	ເຊົາແລ້ວ.
Yes (already gone, finished).	mót lèuṗw.	ຫມົດແລ້ວ.

M-4

Not yet.	njǎṅ.	ຍັງ.
----------	-------	------

M-5

Chat, talk	lóm	ລົມ
With	káp	ກັບ
Meet, find	phòo	ພໍ້
See	hǎn	ເຫ້
Result	phǎn	ຜົນ
Join	hūam	ຮ່ວມ
Participate	hūam	ຮ່ວມ
Ceremony	phīthíi	ພິທີ
Hear a sermon	fáṅ thèet	ຟັງເທດ

Did you get a chance to eat with him?	càw thán dàj lóm káp láaw boo?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ລົມກັບລາວບໍ?
Did you get a chance to meet her?	càw thán dàj phòo káp láaw boo?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບກັບລາວບໍ?
Were you able to see any results (in the time available) ?	càw thán dàj hǎn phǎn njǎṅ boo?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຫ້ ຜົນ ຫຍັງບໍ?
Did you get to the ceremony in time to participate?	càw thán dàj hūam phīthíi boo?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮ່ວມພິທີບໍ?
Did you get a chance to hear the sermon?	càw thán dàj fáṅ thèet boo?	ເຈົ້າໄດ້ຟັງເທດບໍ?

M- 6

Read	āan	ອາ
Only, but	tēε	ແຕ່
Speak	wàw	ເວົ້າ
With, along	nám	້າ
Word	khám	ຄໍາ
Put out a fire	mòot fáj	ມອດໄຟ
Burn	mâj	ໄຫມ້
Shake hand	cáp mýy	ຈັບມື
Return	káp paj / máa	ກັບ ໄປ/ ມາ

I was able to read only two books (in the time available).	khôj thán dàj āan pým tēε sǝwŋ hũa.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ອາ ປຶ້ມ ແຕ່ສອງຫົວ.
I had a chance to speak only two or three words with him.	khôj thán dàj wàw nám láaw tēε sǝwŋ sǎam khám.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ເວົ້າ ິ່າ ລາວແຕ່ສອງ-ສາມຄໍາ.
I was able to put out the fire before the house burned down.	khôj thán dàj mòot fáj kǝon mán si mâj hýan.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ມອດໄຟກ່ອ ມັຊີໄຫມ້ເຮືອ .
I had a chance to shake hands with him before he returned.	khôj thán dàj cáp mýy káp phǝn kǝon phǝn si káp paj.	ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຈັບມືກັບເພິ່ນກ່ອເພິ່ນຊີກັບໄປ.

C-1

A. Did you close the door yet ? A. càw át pá-tuu lèuƿw lýy nján?

B. Yes . B. át lèuƿw .

C-2

A. Did you write the letter yet ? A. càw khĩan cót-maƿaj lèuƿw lýy nján ?

B. Not yet . B. nján .

C-3

A. Did you wash your hands yet ? A. càw làan mýy lèuƿw lýy nján ?

B. Yes , I've already washed my hands. B. làan lèuƿw, khôj làan mýy khôj lèuƿw .

C-4

A. Did you get to meet him ? A. càw thán dàj phòo káp láaw boo ?

B. Yes , I got to meet him before he thán, khôj thán dàj phòo káp láaw kōon returned . B. láaw cá, káp paj.

C-5

A. He almost didn't get to talk to them, isn't that so ? A. láaw kýap bōo dàj wàw nám khá-càw, mēen boo ?

B. That's right. He only got to saj two or three words to them . B. mēen lèuƿw, láaw thán dàj wàw nám khá-càw tēe sōoŋ sǎam khám .

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ ກຽ ຖາມກັ ເບິ່ງວ່າ ຜູ້ໃດກະທຳ ອັນໃດແລ້ວຫລືຍັງ. ຖ້າຕອບວ່າ "ບໍ່" ຫລື "ຍັງ" ກໍຈົ່ງບອກໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ໃຫ້ເຫດຜົ ວ່າ " ຫຼືຍັງ?" ຫລືຖ້າເຂົາຕອບວ່າ: "...ແລ້ວ." ກໍຈົ່ງຖາມວ່າ: "ຕໍ່ໄປເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຈະເຮັດຫຍັງ?"

NOTES

1) thán dàj means 'to have been able to do something in the available time'. It may occur in the negative with the meaning 'not to have got something done when it was supposed to have been done.'

khôj thán dàj mót fáj kōon 'I was able to put out the fire before
mán si māj hýan the house burned down.'

khôj nján bōo thán dàj āan 'I haven't got your book read yet.'

pỳm cằw.

khôj thán dằj āan pỳm 'I've only got two books read.'
tēε sớoη hũa.

- 2) lềεw and njánh are 'aspect words', i. e. ., they indicate the state of an action, whether it is completed (lềεw) or whether it remains incomplete [njánh]. njánh is a preverb and occurs before bồo VP:

khôj njánh bồo thán dằj pừừ 'I haven't got around to translating it yet.'

njánh may occur alone in (a) responses to questions:

Q¹ cằw wỉi phỏm lềεw lỷy njánh? 'Have you combed your hair yet?'

A¹ njánh 'not yet.' Or (b) in parallel sentences like the question above.

- 3) When an affirmative sentence with lềεw and the negative form of the same sentence with njánh are joined with lỷy 'or', the negative sentence is reduced to njánh and follows the affirmative sentence;

Affirmative: cằw thửu khừừw lềεw . 'You have brushed your teeth.'

Negative: cằw njánh bồo thửu khừừw. 'You haven't brushed your teeth yet.'

When combined with lỷy¹ cằw thửu khừừw láaw lỷy njánh?

'Have you brushed your teeth yet or not?'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khồoj_____ khỉan cớo-malaj hũa phỳan khôj.

(I haven't had a chance to write a letter to my friend yet.)

(b) láaw khỉan cớo-mảaj_____ tēε láaw _____ thán dằj sớo.

(He's written a letter, but he hasn't had a chance to mail it yet.)

(c) cằw dằj hầp khầaw njẩη cầak khá-cằw_____ ?

(Have you had any news from them yet or not?)

(d) láaw njẩη bồo thán_____ phồ-wầa láaw njẩη bồo thán dằj

(He hasn't eaten breakfast, because he hasn't had a chance to wash his face yet.)

(e) láaw bōo míi wǐi láaw_____nján bōo thán daj wǐi phǒm.

(He hasn't got a comb so he hasn't yet been able to comb his hair.)

(f) láaw pɯɯ naŋ-syŋy hâj khá-càw lèew tēε wāa khá-càw _____aw ɲén hâj láaw.

(He has already translated the book for them, but they haven't yet got around to paying him.)

(g) càw bōok láaw át pá-tuu _____?

(Have you told him to close the door yet or not?)

(h) thâawāa pá-tuu _____ pɯɯ wāa láaw nján bōo thán máa.

(If the door isn't opened yet, that means he hasn't arrived yet.)

(i) khôj nján bōo _____ khôj phō-wāa khôj nján bōo míi wéeláa.

(I haven't yet been able to wash my clothes because I haven't had time yet.)

(j) láaw nján bōo thán dàj _____ khǒɔŋ khá-càw.

(He hasn't yet been able to come inspect their work.)

CYCLE- 67

M-1

Fix	puyun	ແປງ
Repair	puyun	ແປງ
Give an interview	hâj sǎmphàat	ໃຫ້ສໍາພາດ
Count	nāp	ບັບ
Money	ḡn	ເງິນ
Investigate	sḡyypsūan	ສືບສວນ
Interrogate	sōopsūan	ສອບສວນ
Record Sound	banthḡk sǎn	ບັນທຶກສຽງ
Dismantle	màan	ມ້າງ
Disassemble	màan	ມ້າງ
Gun	pyyn	ປືນ

Has he finished giving the interview?	láaw dâj hâj sǎmphàat lèuḡw lèuḡw bōō?	ລາວໄດ້ໃຫ້ສໍາພາດແລ້ວບໍ່?
Has he finished counting money?	láaw dâj nāp ḡn lèuḡw lèuḡw bōō?	ລາວໄດ້ບັບເງິນ ແລ້ວບໍ່?
Has he finished the investigation?	láaw dâj sḡyypsūan lèuḡw lèuḡw bōō?	ລາວໄດ້ສືບສວນ ແລ້ວບໍ່?
Has he finished the interrogation?	láaw dâj sōopsūan lèuḡw lèuḡw bōō?	ລາວໄດ້ສອບສວນ ແລ້ວບໍ່?
Has he finished recording?	láaw dâj banthḡk sǎn lèuḡw lèuḡw bōō?	ລາວໄດ້ບັນທຶກສຽງແລ້ວບໍ່?
Has he finished taking the gun apart?	láaw dâj màan pyyn lèuḡw lèuḡw bōō?	ລາວໄດ້ມ້າງປືນ ແລ້ວບໍ່?

M-2

Yes, (he has) finished.	lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ແລ້ວໆ.
No, (he has) not finished yet.	bṵṵ, njánṅ bṵṵ lèuṗw.	ບໍ່, ຍັງບໍ່ແລ້ວ.
Not yet, (he has) not finished yet.	njánṅ, njánṅ bṵṵ lèuṗw.	ຍັງ, ຍັງບໍ່ແລ້ວ.

M-3

Record sound	átsiánṅ	ອັດສຽງ
Decorate	èe	ເອ້
Clear (a forest)	thǎanṅ	ຖາງ
Forest	pāa	ປ່າ
Plow	thǎj	ໄຖ
Rice paddy	náa	າ
Sickle	kīaw	ກຽວ
Rice	khâw	ເຂົ້າ
Strike, slap, flail	fàat	ຟາດ
Harrow	khàat	ຄາດ

He has finished recording.	láaw dǎj átsiánṅ lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ອັດສຽງແລ້ວໆ.
He has finished decorating the house.	láaw dǎj èe hýan lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ເອ້ເຮືອ ແລ້ວໆ
He has finished clearing the wood.	láaw dǎj thǎanṅ pāa lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ຖາງປ່າແລ້ວໆ.
He has finished plowing the rice field.	láaw dǎj thǎj náa lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ໄຖ າແລ້ວໆ.
He has finished harvesting the rice.	láaw dǎj kīaw khâw lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ກຽວເຂົ້າແລ້ວໆ
He has finished threshing the rice by hand.	láaw dǎj fàat khâw lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ຟາດເຂົ້າແລ້ວໆ
He has finished harrowing the rice field.	láaw khàat náa lèuṗw lèuṗw.	ລາວໄດ້ຄາດ າແລ້ວໆ

M-4

Pound (in mortar)	tam	ຕໍາ
Cook by boiling	hǔn	ຫຸ່ງ
Cooked, ripe	súk	ສຸກ
Cook by steaming	nỳn	ໜີ້ງ

He hasn't finished cooking the rice. láaw dǎj hǔn khâw nján bōw súk. ລາວໄດ້ຫຸ່ງເຂົ້າ ຍັງບໍ່ສຸກ.

He hasn't finished cooking the (sticky) rice. láaw dǎj nỳn khâw nján bōw súk. ລາວໄດ້ໜີ້ງເຂົ້າ ຍັງບໍ່ສຸກ.

M-5

Sharpen, sharp	lǔm	ແຫລມ
Crayon	sōw	ສໍ
Comb	wǐi	ຫວີ
Get dressed	nūn khyan	ຸ່ງເຄື່ອງ

What is he going to do after he finished sharpening the pencils? lǔm sōw lèu lèu ແຫລມສໍແລ້ວ ລາວ ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?

Is he going to get dressed after he finishes combing his hair? wǐi phōm lèu lèu ຫວີຜົມແລ້ວ ລາວ ຊິ ຸ່ງເຄື່ອງບໍ?

C-1

A. càw puu lōt lèw lǔm r bōw ? A. Have you finished fixing your car?

B. lèw lèw B. Yes, I have.

C-2

A. càw màn pyyn càw lèw lǔm r bōw ? A. Have you finished taking your gun apart?

B. bōw, nján bōw lèw B. No, I haven't finished yet.

C-3

A. càw āan cót-maŋaj lèew lùŋŋw ɾ bōo ? A. Have you finished the letter?

B. nján, nján bōo lèew. B. No, I haven't finished the book?

C-4

A. càw kúat pým lèew lùŋŋw ɾ bōo? A. Have you finished checking the book?

B. 𑜀𑜂𑜆, khôj kúat pým lèew. B. Yes, I have finished checking the book.

C-5

A. láaw nŷŋ khâw súk lèew bōo ? A. Has he finished cooking the rice?

B. bōo, láaw nŷŋ khâw nján bōo súk B. No, he hasn't finished cooking the rice.

C-6

A. khúa-kin lèew lùŋŋwɾ láaw si hēt njăn? A. What is he going to do when he finishes cooking ?

B. khúa-kin lèew lùŋŋwɾ láaw si 𑜀𑜂𑜆n háw B. When he finishes cooking he will call us to the table.

NOTES

1) lèew as an Aspect particle indicating 'action completed at a particular time' and as a secondary verb meaning 'to complete some activity' may occur in one sentence, thus

láaw pɯɯŋ lōt lèew lèew 'He has already finished marking repairs on the car.'

in normal speech the second lèew occurs in reduced form as lù.

2) The response to... lèew lùŋŋwɾ bōo? questions may be:

Question: càw pɯɯŋ lōt càw 'Have you finished fixing your car yet?'
lèew lèew bōo ?

Affirmative

Response:

(a) lèew lùŋŋwɾ 'Yes, I have.'

(b) 𑜀𑜂𑜆, khôj pɯɯŋ lōt 'Yes, I've finished making the repairs
lèew lùŋŋwɾ to my car already.'

Negative:

(a) bōo, nján bōo lèew 'No, I haven't finished yet.'

(b) nján, nján bōo lèew 'No, I haven't finished yet,'

3) VP + lèεw lèεw corresponds closely in meaning to English past participial constructions 'having... ed', etc. When VP + lèεw lèεw precedes NP + VP, there is an indication that the action referred to in the initial VP occurred before that in the second VP. Compare English and Lao:

English: Having done his work, he went to bed.(or)
After he did...

Lao: hēt wìak lèεw lèεw, láaw paj nóon

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) tháaη_____dút_____phēn c̄yη bōo hāj lōt thíaw.

(The road is not yet completed so they don't let cars pass through.)

(b) m̄ya njíη_____phùak thā-hǎan pháa kan màaη pyyn ôok sēt l̄w sāj nàm mán.

(When the firing is over, the soldiers as a group take their guns apart and oil them simultaneously.)

(c) phōo-náa thǎj náa_____láaw c̄yη_____thán khàat.

(The farmer hasn't finished plowing so he hasn't started harrowing yet.)

(d) m̄ya kīaw khâw_____phùak phōo-náa pháa kan fàat khâw.

(When the harvesting is done, the farmers as a group knock the heads off the rice stalks.)

(e) m̄ya wéeláa_____m̄w̄w̄-khàa nāp b̄l̄η η̄l̄n khǒoη láaw.

(When everything is sold out, the female vendor counts her money [to see how much she took in]).

(f) thāa wāa láaw hēt wìak n̄i_____láaw si bōo m̄ya h́yan.

(If he hasn't finished doing this work, he will not go home.)

(g) ph̄ya cá ? hēt náa phēn t̀̀̀̀ thǎaṅ pāa____phēn c̄yṅ aw thǎj
máa thǎj

(In order to farm one has to clear the forest, once the forest is cleared, one brings a plough in and ploughs the land).

(h) lǎṅ câak s̄̀̀̀psũan____tamluat koo p̄̀̀̀oj khá-càw káp bàn.

(After the interrogation is completed, the police lets them go home.)

(i) s̄̀̀̀psũan____njáṅ ca? t̀̀̀̀̀ m̄i kaan banth̄ȳk îik.

(The interrogation has been completed but the process is not over yet, there still are recordings that have to be made.)

(j) m̄ya èe h̄yan____láaw si s̄̀̀̀n m̄u máa kin liàṅ.

(When the decoration of the house has been finished, she will invite friends over for a party.)

CYCLE- 68

M-1

Work	hēt-wiāk	ເຮັດວຽກ
Write the book	khǎn pỳm	ຂຽງ ບັ້ມ
Drive the car	kháp lōt	ຂັບລົດ
Build the house	púk hýan	ບຸກເຮືອ
Cut the hair	tát-phǒm	ຕັດຜົມ
Watch the house	fâw hýan	ເຝົ້າເຮືອ
Type the letter	phím nǎŋ-sýy	ພິມຫ້ງສື

Who do you work for?	càw hēt-wiāk hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າເຮັດວຽກໃຫ້ໃຜ?
Who do you write the book for?	càw khǎn pỳm hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າຂຽງ ບັ້ມໃຫ້ໃຜ?
Who do you drive the car for?	càw kháp lōt hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າຂັບລົດໃຫ້ໃຜ?
Who do you build the house for?	càw púk hýan hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າບຸກເຮືອ ໃຫ້ໃຜ?
Who did you cut the hair for?	càw tát phǒm hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າຕັດຜົມໃຫ້ໃຜ?
Who do you watch the house for?	càw fâw hýan hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າເຝົ້າເຮືອ ໃຫ້ໃຜ?
Who do you type the letter for?	càw phim nǎŋ-sýy hâj phǎj?	ເຈົ້າພິມຫ້ງສືໃຫ້ໃຜ?

M-2

Go and get	paj aw	ໄປເອົາ
Send the letter	sōṅ nǎṅ-sǎy	ສົ່ງຫ້າງສີ
Fix the car	puṅṅ lōt	ແປງລົດ
Wash the car	lāaṅ lōt	ລ້າງລົດ
Cook	khúa-kin	ຄົວກິ
Arrange the books	mian p̄ym	ມັ່ງ ປຶ້ມ

I am going to get for him.	khôj si paj aw hâj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປເອົາໃຫ້ລາວ.
I will send the letter for him.	khôj si sōṅ nǎṅ-sǎy hâj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍ ຊິສົ່ງຫ້າງສີໃຫ້ລາວ.
I will fix the car for him.	khôj si puṅṅ lōt hâj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຊິແປງລົດໃຫ້ລາວ.
I will wash the car for him.	khôj si lāaṅ lōt hâj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຊິລ້າງລົດໃຫ້ລາວ.
I will cook for him.	khôj si khúa-kin hâj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຊິຄົວກິ ໃຫ້ລາວ.
I will arrange the books for him.	khôj si mian p̄ym hâj láaw.	ຂ້ອຍຊິມັ່ງ ປຶ້ມໃຫ້ລາວ.

M-3

Servant	khón-sàj	ຄົ ໃຊ້
Carpenter	sāaŋ-màj	ຊ່າງໄມ້
Secretary	lée-khǎa-nū-kaan	ເລຂານຸກາ
Mechanic	náaj-sāaŋ	າຍຊ່າງ
Barber	sāaŋ tát-phǒm	ຊ່າງຕັດຜົມ

What is the servant to do for you?	khón-sàj si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	ຄົ ໃຊ້ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
What is the carpenter going to do for you?	sāaŋ-màj si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	ຊ່າງໄມ້ ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
What is the secretary going to do for you?	lée-khǎa-nū-kaan si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	ເລຂານຸກາ ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
What is the mechanic going to do for you?	náaj-sāaŋ si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	າຍຊ່າງ ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
What's the barber going to do for you?	sāaŋ-tát-phǒm si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	ຊ່າງຕັດຜົມ ຊິ ເຮັດຫຍັງໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?

C-1

A. Who are you going to fix the car for? A. càw si puuŋ lōt hâj phǎj? the

B. I will fix(the car) for him. B. khôj si puuŋ hâj láaw

C-2

A. Who will take it for you? A. phǎj si aw paj hâj càw?

B. The servant will take it for me. B. kón sàj si aw paj hâj khôj

C-3

A. What's the mechanic going to do for you? A. náaj sāaŋ si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?

B. He will fix the car for me. B. láaw si puuŋ lōt hâj khôj.

NOTES

- 1) hâj in the construction VP + hâj + NP indicates that the activity referred to in VP is either done (a) for the benefit of, or (b) in place of the person (s) referred to in NP.

láaw kháp lôt hâj khôj 'He drives for me (in place of me).'

láaw tát phỏm hâj khôj 'He cuts my hair (for my benefit).'

hâj has many other meanings but the most of them relate in some way to one or the other of the two categories stated above. hâj parallels English for in only a few instances.

- 2) hâj kan indicates that some activity is carried out for the mutual benefit of the parties participating in it. khá-càw khúa-kin hâj kan 'They cook for each other.'

- 3) hâj + NP may contrast with eej 'oneself' in use.

khôj si khúa-kin hâj láaw phō-wāa 'I'll cook for him, because he can't cook
láaw khúa-kin eej bōo dàj for himself.'

- 4) pháa kan + VP is used to indicate that all the members of a group engage in simultaneous and identical action.

phōo náa pháa kan fàat khâw 'All the farmers flail rice stalks at the same time.'

- 5) khăw occurs in informal usage for khá-càw 'they'. It is commonly used with children. It may also be used for unidentified person.

phēn is also used for 'they', but it is used only for persons of higher status. It also means 'he, she'.

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw wàw wāa láaw jâak máa hēt-wiàk

(He said he would like to come work for me.)

(b) khón kháp-lōt khōj si paj kháplōt_____ sǒoŋ mỳy.

(My chauffeur will go drive for him two days.)

(c) phùak nāk-hían bōo jâak sĩa nén khāa tátphǒm khá-càw cỳŋ tátphǒm

(Students don't like to spend money on haircuts, so they cut each other's hair.)

(d) lée-khǎa-nū-kaan bōok wāa láaw si phím naŋ-syŋ_____mỳy nìi.

(The secretary said she would finish typing the letter for me today.)

(e) khōj si khúa-kin_____phō-wāa láaw khúa-kin_____bōo pen.

(I'll cook for her because she doesn't know how to cook herself.)

(f) láaw pưưŋ lōt bōo pen láaw cỳŋ si càaŋ náaj sāaŋ

(He doesn't know how to fix a car himself, so he will hire a mechanic to come fix it for him.)

(g) sāaŋ màj si_____khōj koo bōo hùu.

(I don't know what the carpenter is going to do for me either.)

(h) khōj si aw khǒoŋ nìi sāj lōt paj khǎaj

(I'll put these things in the car and go sell them for her.)

(i) déknòoj_____lāaŋ lōt_____phō-wāa khǎw jâak hāj khōj pháa paj sũan sát.

(The children all pitch in and wash the car for me because they want me to take them to the zoo.)

(j) khōj bōo dii caj njòon wāa sāaŋ tátphǒm tátphǒm_____sân phòot.

(I'm not happy due to the fact that the barber cut my hair too short.)

CYCLE-69

M-1

Work	hēt kaan	ເຮັດກາ
Have a lot of money	míi ḡn láaj	ມີເງິ ຫລາຍ
Engage in sport	lín kíiláa	ຫຼິ້ນກີລາ
Run	lēen	ແລ່
See many cities	hěn láaj mýaḡ	ເຫັນ ຫລາຍເມືອງ
Listen to the song	fáḡ phéenḡ	ຟັງເພງ

I want to work.	khôj jáak hētkaan.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກເຮັດກາ .
I want to have a lot of money.	khôj jáak míi ḡn láaj.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກມີເງິ ຫລາຍ.
I want to engage in sports.	khôj jáak lín kíiláa.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກຫຼິ້ນກີລາ.
I want to run.	khôj jáak lēen.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກແລ່ .
I want to see many cities.	khôj jáak hěn láaj mýaḡ.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກເຫັນ ຫລາຍເມືອງ.
I want to listen to the song.	khôj jáak fáḡ phéenḡ.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກຟັງເພງ.

M-2

Come to see (someone)	máa hǎa	ມາຫາ
Stay with me	jūu nám khôj	ຢູ່ ອ້ອຍ
Get married	tēɛŋŋáan	ແຕ່ງງາ
Concentrate on	tàŋcaj	ຕັ້ງ ໃຈ
Stop smoking	sáw sūup jaa	ເຊົາສູບຢາ
Begin working	lɤm hētkaan	ເລີ່ມເຮັດກາ

I want him to come to see me.	khôj jâak hâj láaw máa hǎa khôj.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວມາຫາຂ້ອຍ.
I want him to stay with me.	khôj jâak hâj láaw jūu nám khôj.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວຢູ່ ອ້ອຍ.
I want him to get married.	khôj jâak hâj láaw tēɛŋŋáan.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວແຕ່ງງາ .
I want him to concentrate on studying.	khôj jâak hâj láaw tàŋcaj hían.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວຕັ້ງໃຈຮຽນ .
I want her to stop smoking.	khôj jâak hâj láaw sáw sūup jaa.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວເຊົາສູບຢາ.
I want him to begin working.	khôj jâak hâj láaw lɤm hētkaan.	ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວເລີ່ມເຮັດກາ .

M-3

Teacher	náajkhúu	າຍຄູ
Government	rāthābaan	ລັດຖະບາ
Monk	khúubaa	ຄູບາ
Children	déknòoj	ເດັກ ອຍ
Your children	lùuk càw	ລູກເຈົ້າ

What does the teacher want you to do? náajkhúu jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ? າຍຄູຢາກໃຫ້ເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງ?

What does the government want you do? rāthābaan jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ? ລັດຖະບາ ຢາກໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ ເຮັດຫຍັງ?

What does the monk want you to do? khúubaa jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ? ຄູບາຢາກໃຫ້ເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງ?

What do the children want you to do? déknòoj jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ? ເດັກ ອຍ ຢາກໃຫ້ເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງ?

C-1

A. What do you want to do? A. càw jâak hēt njǎṅ?

B. I want to hear the songs. B. khôj jâak fáṅ phéṅ

C-2

A. What do you want me to do? A. càw jâak hâj khôj hēt njǎṅ?

B. I want you to stay with him. B. khôj jâak hâj càw jūu nám láaw.

C-3.

A. What does the teacher want you to do? A. náaj khúu jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ?

B. He want me to concentrate on studying. B. phṛn jâak hâj khôj tàncaj hían.

ຈົ່ງລະວັງ ຢ່າປ່ອຍໃຫ້ ກຽງ ໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ຢາກ" ຢ່າງຜິດໆພາດໆ. ສ່ວ ມາກເຂົາກໍມັກເວົ້າວ່າ: "ຂ້ອຍຢາກລາວໄປຕະຫຼາດ." ແທນທີ່ຈະເວົ້າວ່າ: "ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ ລາວໄປຕລາດ."

NOTES

1) jâak VP means 'to want, would like (to do something)'.

khôj jâak míi ṅén láaj 'I would like to have lots of money.'

When the Subject of the sentence and the person performing the action are not the same person, jâak hâj + VP is used.

khôj jâak hâj láaw pen náaj khúu 'I want her to be a teacher.'

2) phòom kan means 'simultaneously' or 'at the same time'.

khôj khít wāa khá-càw si bōo 'I don't think they will arrive simultaneously.'
máa hòot phòom kan

3) ton 'oneself, itself, themselves' is used in place of láaw or khá-càw when the subject of the sentence and the person (s) referred to later are the same person:

phòomṭṭṭ thūk khón koo jâak hâj 'All parents would like to have their children
lùuk khṵṵ ton tàncaj híanaṅsṅy concentrate on studying.'
(phòomṭṭṭ and ton refer to the same people.)

(The monk told the novice to study hard to gain knowledge.)

M-2

Drive a car	kháp lōt	ຂັບລົດ
Wash car	làaη lōt	ລ້າງລົດ
Check	kûat	ກວດ
Draw	tèuηm	ເຕ້ມ
Pay	cāaj	ຈ່າຍ
Turn on the light	tàj fáj	ໄຕ້ໄຟ
Turn off the light	mòot fáj	ມອດໄຟ

Who will you let drive for you?	càw si hâj phăj kháp lōt hâj càw?	ເຈົ້າຊິໃຫ້ໃຜຂັບລົດ ໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
Who will you let wash the car for you?	càw si hâj phâj làaη lōt hâj càw?	ເຈົ້າຊິໃຫ້ໃຜລ້າງລົດໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
Who will you let check it for you?	càw si hâj phăj kûat hâj càw?	ເຈົ້າຊິໃຫ້ໃຜກວດໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
Who will you let pay it for you?	càw si hâj phâj cāaj hâj càw?	ເຈົ້າຊິໃຫ້ໃຜຈ່າຍໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
Who will you let turn on the light for you?	càw si hâj phâj tàj fáj hâj càw?	ເຈົ້າຊິໃຫ້ໃຜໄຕ້ໄຟໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?
Who will you let turn off the light for you?	càw si hâj phâj mòot fáj hâj càw?	ເຈົ້າຊິໃຫ້ໃຜມອດໄຟໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ?

C-1

A. What will he have you do for him.

A. láaw si hâj càw hēt njăṅ hâj láaw?

B. He will have me shine shoes for him.

B. láaw si hâj khôj phát kṛṇp hâj láaw.

C-2

A. Who will they have look after their children for them?

A. khá-càw si hâj phăj bṛṇ lùuk hâj khá-càw?

B. Their neighbor.

B. khá-càw si hâj phyanbàan khá-càw bṛṇ hâj.

C-3

A. What were you going to have him do for you?

A. càw wāa si hâj láaw hēt njăṅ hâj càw?

B. I was going to have him type letters for me.

B. khôj wāa si hâj láaw phím naṇ-syṇy hâj khôj.

ໃນບົດນີ້ກໍແມ່ນການໃຊ້ "ໃຫ້" ສອງຕໍ່. ຈົ່ງພາກຮຽ ລິມ ຫລືທວ ຄື ເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ມີຫຍັງແດ່ທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຍັງບໍ່ຈື່ ຫລືຍັງ ໃຊ້ຢ່າງຜິດໆພາດໆ. ຖ້າຫາກຍັງມີ ກໍຈົ່ງພາເຂົາກຊ້ອມຄື ໃຫມ່ອີກ.

NOTES

1) hâj frequently occurs twice in a sentence, once with the meaning 'on behalf of, for the benefit of' (benefactive meaning as in Cycle 68) and once with the meaning 'to have, let, cause (someone to do something)' (causative meaning as in Cycle 69):

khôj hâj láaw khúa-kin hâj [khôj] 'I had her cook for me.'

NP after hâj (benefactive) may be omitted if it has the same referent as NP (Subject), as in the example above and in this example :

phùak náaj khúu hâj láaw kháp 'The teachers let him drive for them.'
lôt hâj [khá-càw]

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English and check your answers:

- (a) thâawāa láaw khúa-kin pen, khôj si hâj láaw khúa-kin hâj khôj.
- (b) càw si hâj láaw bᵼᵇ lùuk hâj càw bōō ?
- (c) phâj si hēt wiak hâj phăj khôj koo nján bōō hùu thya.
- (d) wéeláa càw bōō jūu càw si hâj phăj fâw hyan hâj càw.
- (e)
mỳy wáan nìi láaw hâj déknòoj láaᵇ lōt hâj láaw, càw hùu bōō láaw aw
ᵇén hâj khăw thāwdaj?
- (f)
khôj jâak hâj láaw máa kúat bᵼᵇ cák lōt hâj khôj phō-wāa diawnìi lōt kh
ôj lēen bōō khōoj dii paandaj.
- (g) láaw bōō khᵇᵇj hâj khón yyn hēt wiak hâj phō-wāa láaw bōō sya caj
khá-càw.
- (h)
thâawāa càw jâak hâj láaw lēen wiak hâj càw, càw tōoj sỳy lōt hâj láaw
.
- (i)
khôj si hâj láaw khăaj khōoj nìi hâj khá-càw phō-wāa khá-càw bōō míi
wéeláa paj khăaj eeᵇ.
- (j)
kaan hâj khón yyn títtōo káp càw khōoj thīi din âat cá bōō dàj phón dī
i thōo kaan thīi háw paj títtōo eeᵇ.

CYCLE-71

M-1

Table	tó	ໂຕະ
Dictionary	wātcá-náa-nū-kom	ວັດຈະນານຸກົມ
Cabinet	tùu	ຜູ້
Light bulb	dôok fáj fàa	ດອກໄຟຟ້າ
Chain	sǎaj sôo	ສາຍໂສ້
Soap	sá-buu	ສະບູ

What is this table made of?	tó nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	ໂຕະນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?
What is this dictionary made of?	wātcá-náa-nū-kom hǔa nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	ວັດຈະນານຸກົມນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?
What is this cabinet made of?	tùu nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	ຜູ້ນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?

M-2

Chain (jewelry)	sǎaj sôwj	ສາຍສ້ອຍ
Belt	sǎaj ພຸພຸ	ສາຍແອວ
Window	pōwŋjiam	ປ່ອງຢ້ຽມ
Tray	pháa-thâat	ພາຖາດ
Scissors	mìittát	ມີດຕັດ
Iron	lék	ເຫລັກ
Wires	sǎajfáj	ສາຍໄຟ
Copper	thóŋduພຸພຸ	ທອງເດງ
Plastic	plastík	ປລາດສະຕິກ
Chemical	khÿaŋkhéemíi	ເຄື່ອງເຄມີ

This chain is made of gold. sǎajsôwj nìi hēt dùaj khám. ສາຍສ້ອຍນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍຄໍາ.

This belt is made of leather. sǎaj ພຸພຸ nìi hēt dùaj nǎŋ. ສາຍແອວນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍໜັງ.

This window is made of glass. pōwŋjiam nìi hēt dùaj kèພຸພຸ. ປ່ອງຢ້ຽມນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍແກ້ວ.

These scissors are made of iron. mìittát nìi hēt dùaj lék. ມີດຕັດນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍເຫລັກ.

M-3

Flag	thún	ທຸງ
Paper	cìa	ເຈ້ຍ
Paper flag	thúnçìa	ທຸງເຈ້ຍ
Rope	sỳak	ເຊືອກ
Nylon	níilón	ນີລົງ
Clothes	kh̄yaṅnūṅ	ເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງ
Fur	khõnsát	ຂີ ສັດ
Bed	tiaṅ	ຕຸງງ
Wood	màj	ໄມ້

A flag which is made of thún thīi hēt dùaj cìa
paper is called a paper flag. ṽn wāa thúnçìa.

ທຸງທີ່ເຮັດດ້ວຍເຈ້ຍເອີ້ນວ່າ ທຸງເຈ້ຍ.

A rope which is made of sỳak thīi hēt dùaj níilón
nylon is called a nylon ṽn wāa sỳakníilón.
rope.

ເຊືອກທີ່ ເຮັດດ້ວຍນີລົງເອີ້ນວ່າ
ເຊືອກນີລົງ.

Clothes which are made kh̄yaṅnūṅ thīi hēt dùaj
of fur are called fur clothing. khõnsát ṽn wāa
kh̄yaṅnūṅ khõnsát.

ເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງທີ່ເຮັດດ້ວຍຂີ ສັດເອີ້ນວ່າ
ເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງຂີ ສັດ.

M-4

Shoes	k ^h ɔp	ເກີບ
Rubber	jaaŋ	ຢາງ
Pot	môo	ໝໍ້
Earth	din	ດີ
Scarves	phâa-phúu	ຜ້າເພ
Silk	mǎj	ໄໝ

How do we call shoes that are made of rubber?	háv ɔn k ^h ɔp thīi hēt dùaj jaaŋ wāa jāaŋ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນເກີບທີ່ເຮັດດ້ວຍຢາງວ່າ ຢາງໃດ?
How do we call pots that are made of earth ware?	háv ɔn môo thīi hēt dùaj din wāa jāaŋ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນໝໍ້ທີ່ເຮັດດ້ວຍດີ ວ່າ ຢາງໃດ?
How do we call scarves that are made of silk?	háv ɔn phâa-phúu thīi hēt dùaj mǎj wāa jāaŋ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນ ຜ້າເພທີ່ເຮັດດ້ວຍໄໝວ່າ ຢາງໃດ?

C-1

- A. What is this table made of? A. to? nūaj nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?
 B. This table is made of metal (iron). B. to? nūaj nìi hēt dùaj lék.

C-2

- A. What do we call flag that are made of paper? A. háv ɔn thúŋ thīi hēt dùaj cìà wāa jāaŋ daj?
 B. We call them paper flags. B. háv ɔn thúŋ thīi hēt dùaj cìà wāa thúŋcìà

C-3

- A. Silk rope is rope that is made of wood, is that right? A. sỳakmǎj mēen sỳak thīi hēt dùaj mǎj mēen boo?

C-4

- A. What's a silk rope made of? A. sỳak mǎj mēen sỳak thīi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?
 B. Silk rope is rope made of silk. B. sỳakmǎj mēen sỳak thīi hēt dùaj mǎj.

ຈົ່ງຖາມ ກຽງ ເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ອີ້ ໃດເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ? ເຮົາເອີ້ນມີ ວ່າ ຢາງໃດ? ລອງໃຫ້ ກຽງ ເວົ້າ ທຽບຄູ ະ ພາບ ຂອງຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ເຊັ່ນ: ໂຕະໄມ້ດີກວ່າໂຕະເຫລັກບໍ່?

NOTES

1) hēt dùaj means 'to be made of'. The response to the question hēt dùaj nǎn 'What is made of?' is some type of material, such as glass, paper, iron, etc..

Q: tùu nìi hēt dùaj nǎn ? 'What is this cabinet made of?'

A tùu nìi hēt dùaj màj 'This cabinet is made of wood.'

2) thīi 'that, which, who' functions as a Noun Phrase substitute and as a connective in NP + thīi + VP constructions: thún thīi hēt dùaj cìà 'A flag (that is) made of paper'

3) háv n̄n wāa jān daj ? (Lit. how do we call) 'What do we call ... ?' is used in requesting the name of something
háv èn kēep thīi hēt dùaj jān wāa jān daj ? 'What do we call shoes that are made of rubber ?'

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences.

- (a) wēentaa hēt dùaj _____
(Eye glasses are made of glass.)
- (b) tó hēt dùaj _____ lék
(Tables are made of metal and wood.)
- (c) móon hēt dùaj _____
(Watches are made of silver.)
- (d) lót _____ lék
(Cars are made of iron.)
- (e) jaan lôt hēt dúaj _____
(Car tires are made of rubber.)
- (f) sýak thīi hēt dùaj mǎj n̄n wāa _____
(Rope that is made of silk is called silk rope.)
- (g) pá-tuu thīi _____ n̄n wāa pá-tuu kùtɿw
(Doors that are made of glass are called glass doors.)
- (h) ká-tāa thīi hēt dùaj wǎaj n̄n wāa _____
(Baskets that are made of rattan are called rattan baskets.)
- (i) kēep _____ n̄n wāa kēep nǎn.
(Shoes that are made of leather are called leather shoes.)

(j) thǒŋ thīi hēt dùaj plaastík _____ thǒŋ plaastík
(Bags that are made of plastic are called plastic bags.)

2) Answer the following questions:

(a) háw 𑄎𑄎 mōo thīi hēt dùaj thóoŋ dũũŋ wāa jāaŋ daj ? _____
(What do we call a pot that is made of copper ?)

(b) háw 𑄎𑄎 wũũŋ thīi hēt dùaj khám wāa jāaŋ daj ?
(What do we call rings that are made of gold ?)

(c) háw 𑄎𑄎 pāakkaa thīi hēt dùaj plaastík wāa jāaŋ daj ?
(What do we call pens that are made of plastic ?)

(d) háw 𑄎𑄎 kápaw thīi hēt dùaj nǎŋ wāa jāaŋ daj?
(What do we call bags that are made of leather ?)

(e) háw 𑄎𑄎 hýan thīi hēt dùaj màj phāj wāa jāaŋ daj ?
(What do we call house that are made of bamboo ?)

(f) háw 𑄎𑄎 tǎŋ ìi thīi hēt dùaj wǎaj wāa jāaŋ daj ?
(What do we call a chair that is made of rattan ?)

(g) háw 𑄎𑄎 sáam thīi hēt dùaj lék wāa jāaŋ daj?
(What do we call a dish that is made of metal ?)

(h) háw 𑄎𑄎 thóŋ thàw thīi hēt dùaj fāaj wāa jāaŋ daj ?
(What do we call socks that are made of cotton?)

(l) háw 𑄎𑄎 sýa thīi hēt dùaj mǎj wāa jāaŋ daj?
(What do we call a blouse that is made of silk?)

(j) háw 𑄎𑄎 sáam thīi hēt dùaj cía wāa jāaŋ daj?
(What do we call plates that are made of paper?)

CYCLE-72

M-1

Write	khǎan	ຂຽ
Cut	tát	ຕັດ
Dig	khút	ຊຸດ
Cross the river	khâam mṵṵ-nàm	ຂ້າມແມ່ ຈໍ
Travel	dəontháaŋ	ເດີ ທາງ

What did he write with?	láaw dâj khǎan dùaj njǎŋ?	ລາວໄດ້ຂຽ ດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?
What does he cut (it) with?	láaw tát dùaj njǎŋ?	ລາວຕັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?
What did he cross the river with?	láaw dâj khâam mṵṵ-nàm dùaj njǎŋ?	ລາວໄດ້ຂ້າມແມ່ ຈໍດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?
How did he travel?	láaw dâj dəontháaŋ dùaj njǎŋ?	ລາວໄດ້ເດີ ທາງດ້ວຍຫຍັງ?

M-2

Cut	tát	ຕັດ
Saw	l̄yaj	ເລື້ອຍ
Tie	māt	ມັດ
Rattan	wǎaj	ຫວາຍ
Dig	khút	ຊຸດ
Hoe	cók	ຈິກ
Cross the river	khâam m̄ṭṭṭ-nàm	ຂ້າມແມ່ ຈ້
Airplanes	h̄ya bin	ເຮືອບິ
Plow	thǎj	ໄຖ
Plow the rice field	thǎj náa	ໄຖ າ
Paddle the boat	pháaj h̄ya	ພາຍເຮືອ
Paddle	màj pháaj	ໄມ້ພາຍ

They will cut with saws. khá-càw si tát dùaj l̄yaj. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຊິຕັດ ດ້ວຍເລື້ອຍ.

They will dig with hoes. khá-càw si khút dùaj cók. ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຊິຊຸດດ້ວຍຈິກ.

They will travel with khá-càw si dœn tháaṅ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຊິເດີ ທາງ
airplanes. dùaj h̄ya bin. ດ້ວຍເຮືອນບິ .

They plow the rice field khá-càw thǎj náa dùaj thǎj. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄຖ າດ້ວຍໄຖ.
with plows.

They paddle the khá-càw pháaj h̄ya dùaj ເຂົາເຈົ້າພາຍເຮືອດ້ວຍໄມ້ພາຍ.
boat with paddles. màj pháaj.

C-1

- A. What will you write with? A. càw si khǎan dùaj njǎṅ?
- B. I will write with a pan. B. khôj si khǎan dùaj pâakkaa.

C-2

- A. He will cut wood with a hoe, is that right? A.
láaw si tát màj dùaj cók, mēen bōw? B. No, he will cut wood with a saw.
- B. bōw mēen, láaw si tát màj dùaj l̄yaj.

ຈົ່ງສົມມຸດ ຫາໃດ ຫາ ວ່າ ຂຶ້ນ ແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ ກຽ ເວົ້າ ພາສາ ບອກ ວິທີ ທີ່ ຈະ ແກ້ ໄຂ ບັນຫາ ທີ່ ສົມມຸດ ຂຶ້ນ ເບິ່ງ ດູ່! ຖ້າ ຫາກ ວ່າ ກະ ທຳ ສິ່ງ ໃດ ສິ່ງ ໜຶ່ງ ດ້ວຍ ວິທີ ໃດ ວິທີ ໜຶ່ງ ບໍ່ ສຳ ເລັດ ຜິ ເຂົາ ເຈົ້າ ຄິດ ວ່າ ຈະ ມີ ທາງ ແກ້ ໄຂ ໄດ້ ຢ່າງ ໃດ ອີກ ແດ່?

NOTES

1) VP + dùaj NP (Instrument) is used to indicate what device or means is used to perform some activity:

kácàw tát màj dùaj l̄yaj 'They cut the wood with a saw.'

khá-càw si māt dùaj wǎaj 'They'll tie it up with rattan.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) láaw bōw míi pâakkaa láaw c̄yṅ khǎan dùaj sǒdam.
- (b) din jūu n̄i kh̄uṅ lǎaj ca? khút dùaj njǎṅ kōw bōw dàj.
- (c) thāawāa tát dùaj l̄yaj thámmādaa bōw dàj láaw si tát dùaj l̄yaj tát lék.
- (d) kaan d̄oen tháaṅ dùaj lōt cáak wíanṅcan paj hǎa lǔaṅ-phābaaṅ bōw pōot pháj.
- (e) phōw náa jūu m̄yaṅ láaw thǎj náa dùaj thǎj nōw.
- (f) láaw sòok hǎa h̄ya bōw h̄en láaw c̄yṅ khāam m̄t̄e-nam dùaj thōon màj.
- (g) d̄oen-tháaṅ dùaj kh̄yaṅ bin wáj kwāa kaan d̄oen tháaṅ dùaj lōt.
- (h) láaw bōw h̄u wāa ca? māt dōok màj n̄i dùaj njǎṅ.
- (i) thāawāa háw bōw míi màj-pháaj háw si tōwṅ pháaj h̄ya dùaj m̄y.
- (j) láaw njǎṅ bōw h̄u wāa diawn̄i háw áts̄iaṅ dàj dùaj kh̄yaṅ áts̄iaṅ.

2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaṅ khón kinkhâw dùaj

(Some people eat with their hands.)

(b) khôj hōo _____ plaastík.

(I wrapped it with sheets of plastic.)

(c) láaw aw nîip sāj kan _____ lék nîip cìà.

(He attached it with a paper clip.)

(d) láaw hāp fáj khāaw

(He received the news by radio.)

(e) ÿaj khôj ca? dæntháaη káp bàn

(My old sister will return by train.)

(f) khón ciin _____ màj-thūu

(Chinese eat with chopsticks.)

(g) khá-càw khón _____ būaη.

(They stir it with a spoon.)

(h) sēt ôok dùaj

(Wipe it off with a soft cloth.)

(i) njök lôt khÿn _____ mēε héεη.

(Raise the car with a jack.)

(j) dyn _____ sǎaj sôo.

(Pull it with a chain.)

(k) māt dùaj _____

(Tie it with a rope.)

(l) thǔu ôok

(Clean it with a brush.)

- (m) _____ dùaj nàm jaa làaη pâak.
(Wash out your mouth with mouth wash.)
- (n) _____ dùaj kúpυs.
(Cook with gas.)
- (o) _____ dùaj lék khǎj kápooη.
(Open it with a can opener.)
- (p) láaw thýk māt taa _____ phâa
(His eyes were bound with a black cloth.)
- (q) tháa
(Paint it with yellow paint.)
- (r) sēt thûaj sáam
(Dry the dishes with a cloth.)
- (s) phát
(Polish it with a cloth.)
- (t) tōok tá-puu _____ khòon tii.
(Drive the nail with a hammer.)
- (u) tíτ taam bᵠη _____ khýaη léedàa.
(Track it by radar.)
- (v) lēen _____ kásũϣ
(Run it on electrical current.)
- (w) _____ khwáam óτ thón.
(Work with patience.)
- (x) _____ dùaj khwáam pá-mâat.
(Don't drive carelessly.)

CYCLE-73

M-1

Make a fire	danfáj	ດັງໄຟ
Underlay	hóວຸ	ຮອງ
Place beneath	hóວຸ	ຮອງ
Sit	nā	ນັ່ງ
Drain	lā-baa	ລະບາຍ
Water	nà	ນ້ຳ
Survey, inspect	sāmluat	ສຳລວດ
Look	bṅ	ເບິ່ງ
Select	lyak	ເລືອກ
Choose	lyak	ເລືອກ
Fruit	māak mà	ຫມາກໄມ້
Have one's meal	kinkhā	ກິນເຂົ້າ
Wrap around	phān	ພັ
Hand	mý	ມື

What will you use cāv si sàj njǎn danfáj? ເຈົ້າຊື້ໃຊ້ຫຍັງດັງໄຟ?
for making a fire?

What will you use to cāv si sàj njǎn lā-baa nà? ເຈົ້າຊື້ໃຊ້ຫຍັງລະບາຍນ້ຳ?
drain the water?

What will you use cāv si sàj njǎn kinkhā? ເຈົ້າຊື້ໃຊ້ຫຍັງກິ ເຂົ້າ?
to eat with?

M-2

Charcoal	thāan	ຖ່າ
Binoculars	khòong sòong	ກ້ອງສອງ
Children	déknòoj	ເດັກ ອຍ
Spoon	būaŋ	ບ່ວງ
Fork	sôm	ສ້ອມ
Machine	khÿaŋcák	ເຄື່ອງຈັກ
Engine	khÿaŋcák	ເຄື່ອງຈັກ
Motor	khÿaŋcák	ເຄື່ອງຈັກ
Cloth	phāa	ຜ້າ

I'll use charcoal for making a fire. khôj si sàj thāan daŋ-fáj. ຂ້ອຍຊື້ໃຊ້ຖ່າ ດັງໄຟ.

I'll use a spoon and fork to eat with. khôj si sàj būaŋ sôm kin khâw ຂ້ອຍຊື້ໃຊ້ບ່ວງກັບສ້ອມກິ ເຂົ້າ

I'll use a machine for irrigating the water. khôj si sàj khÿaŋcák lā-baaŋ nàm ຂ້ອຍຊື້ໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກລະບາຍ ຈ້.

C-1

- A. What will you use for building fire? A. càw si sàj njǎŋ daŋ-fáj?
- B. I'll use charcoal for a fire. B. khôj si sàj thāan daŋ-fáj.

C-2

- A. What will you use paper for? A. càw si sàj cìà hēt njǎŋ? B
- I'll use paper to sit on. B. khôj si sàj cìà hóong nāŋ.

ຈົ່ງຖາມ ກຽ ຂອງ ເບິ່ງດູ ວ່າ ເວລາເຂົາເຈົ້າກະທຳວຽກງາ ຢ່າງໃດຢ່າງ ົ່ງ ຖ້າວ່າບໍ່ມີຂອງ ໃຊ້ແ ວໃດແ ວ ົ່ງ ເຂົາ ເຈົ້າຈະ ໃຊ້ສິ່ງທົດແທ ? ເຕືອນວ່າ ເມື່ອບໍ່ມີສ້ອມ ຫລື ບ່ວງ ເຮົາກໍຕ້ອງໃຊ້ມືກິ ເຂົ້າ ຫຼື ສິ່ງອື່ນແທນ ໃນທຳນອງນີ້.

NOTES

sàj 'to use' + NP + VP may be used in a similar way to dùaj + NP, i.e. to indicate the means or device used for accomplishing something. Compare the two sentences:

khôj sàj būaη sôom kin khâw (Lit. I use spoon fork to eat.)
'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

khôj kin khâw dùaj būaη sôom 'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

sàj may be used with persons as well as things, but should only be used by a person of superior status to one of lower status.

khôj sàj lùuk khôj paj sỳy khốη hâj. 'I have my child go shopping for me.'
(I use my child go buy things for.)

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw _____ pyn khū khón khî-lāk.
(He uses a gun to scare off thieves.)

(b) khá-càw sàj mìit-thũη _____ hâj kan.
(They used razors to shave their heads with.)

(c) láaw _____ khwáam phā-njáa-njáam hēt-wiak con sāmret.
(He uses effort to work until he is successful.)

(d) láaw bōo sálâat phō?wāa láaw _____
_____ hũa khốη láaw hâj pen pá-njóot.
(He is not clever since he has never used his head to advantage.)

(e) láaw _____ pen khỹaη-mýy khốη láaw.
(He uses money as a tool.)

(f) wéeláa láaw pũη naη-syŋ láaw _____ wātca-náa-nū-kom.
(He didn't use a dictionary while translating the book.)

- (g) láaw sàj _____ phán bāat-phǔṣ láaw.
(He uses a clean cloth to wrap his wounds with.)
- (h) khôj bōo khǎj sàj ṅén doolàa.khôj khǎj_____ṅén kīip.
(I've never used dollars. I've only used kips.)
- (i) láaw _____ bōo phían mán cṅ phée jūu lýaj.
(He doesn't use his car carefully so it's always out of repair.)
- (j) láaw _____ khón-sàj láaw paj sṅy khǎj.
(He uses his servant for (to go) shopping.)
- (k) láaw sàj kǎj-thāaj-hùup _____ láaw cṅ _____ hùup.
(He doesn't know how to use a camera so he didn't get any pictures.)
- (l) láaw _____ khón-sàj phōwāa láaw bōo jāak hāp sàj khón ṅyn.
(He doesn't want to be a servant since he doesn't want to be used by others.)
- (m) _____ phǔṣ-thīi sāmāp wāaj phǔṣnkaan.
(Use a map for laying plans.)
- (n) khón láaw _____ náa.
(Laotians used water buffaloes for plowing.)
- (o) láaw _____ Parker.
(He uses a Parker pen.)
- (p) láaw _____ sǔṣ-taa sá-kót cít.
(He uses his eyesight to hypnotize.)
- (q) lōt khán nīi _____ phōwāa khṅacák mán taaj.
(This car can't be used since its motor is dead.)
- (r) thūk khón _____ thīi míi khunnā-phàap dii.
(Everybody likes to use things that are of good quality.)
- (s) láaw bōo hùucák _____
(He doesn't know how to use it.)

2) Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) khôj māk sàj thāan khúa-kin phō?wāa mán sádûak dii.
- (b) khá-càw bōo míi tāη-ìi khá-càw c̄yη sàj c̄ia hóoη nāη.
- (c) sáaw bàan sūan màaak jūu náj m̄yāη láaw sàj t̄εε būaη kinkhāw.
- (d)
m̄ya wéeláa f̄on bōo tók phùak phōo-náa sàj kh̄yāη-cák lā-baaj nàm khāw n
áa.
- (e) khôj si sàj láaw paj tá-lâat hâj khôj phō?wāa khôj míi wìak lǎaj.
- (f) láaw sàj kh̄oη lāw n̄i bōo pen mán c̄yη phée.
- (g)
kaan sàj dékn̄oηj hēt wìak kh̄oη phūu njāj njōom pen kaan ká-thám th̄i b
ōo hòopkhòop.
- (h) sáaw bàan pháa kan sàj phāa phán h̄ua phō?wāa d̄uqt̄ hòon lǎaj.
- (i)
thāawāa bōon nāη p̄yan khá-càw si t̄oη sàj n̄uq̄wdaj n̄uq̄w n̄yη hóoη nāη.
- (j)
kaan sàj s̄iη-kh̄oηj t̄aη t̄aη jāaη bōo th̄ykt̄oηj taam ph̄onpá-nj̄ot kh̄o
η mán âat ca? nám ph̄on s̄iā-hǎaj máa sūu phūu sàj.

CYCLE- 74

M-1

Calendar	pá-tí-thín	ປະຕິທິນ
Clock	móoŋ	ໂມງ
Watch	móoŋ	ໂມງ
Belt	sǎaj ʉʉw	ສາຍແອວ
Gun	pyyn	ປື
Army	kooŋ thāp	ກອງທັບ
Armed forces	kooŋ thāp	ກອງທັບ
Fire engine	lōt-dáp-ph ^໑ ໑	ລົດຕັບເພີງ
Ambulance	lōt-hóoŋmǎo	ລົດໂຮງຫມໍ

What's a calendar for?	pá-tí-thín míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	ປະຕິທິນ ມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບຫຍັງ?
What is a watch for?	móoŋ míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	ໂມງມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບຫຍັງ?
What is a belt for?	sǎaj ʉʉw míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	ສາຍແອວມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບຫຍັງ?
What's an army for?	kooŋ thāp míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	ກອງທັບມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບຫຍັງ?
What's a fire engine for?	lōt-dáp-ph ^໑ ໑ míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	ລົດຕັບເພີງມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບຫຍັງ?
What's an ambulance for?	lōt-hóoŋmǎo míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	ລົດໂຮງຫມໍມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບຫຍັງ?

M-2

Load on	ban-thūk	ບັ ທຸກ
Transport	ban-thūk	ບັ ທຸກ
Tell time	bôok wée-láa	ບອກເວລາ
Fasten	hāt	ຮັດ
Date	wán-thíi	ວັນ ທີ່
Defend	pòong-kan	ປ້ອງກັນ
Put out fire	mòot fáj	ມອດໄຟ

An ambulance is for transporting sick persons.	lōt-hóongmǎo míi wàj sǎmlāp ban-thūk khócép.	ລົດໂຮງໝໍມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບບັ ທຸກ ຄົ ເຈັບ.
A clock is for telling time.	móong míi wàj sǎmlāp bôok wéeláa.	ໂມງມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບບອກເວລາ.
A calendar is for giving the date.	pá-tí-thín míi wàj sǎmlāp bôok wán-thíi.	ປະຕິທິນ ມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບບອກວັນ ທີ່.
An armed force is for defending the country.	kooong thāp míi wàj sǎmlāp pòong-kan pá-thèet.	ກອງທັບມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບປ້ອງກັນ ປະເທດ.
A fire engine is for putting out fires.	lōt-dáp-ph’ong míi wàj sǎmlāp mòot fáj.	ລົດດັບເພີງມີໄວ້ສໍາລັບມອດໄຟ.

C-1

- A. What's a gun for? A. p̄yyn míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎṅ?
- B. A gun's for shooting. B. p̄yyn míi wàj sǎmlāp njíṅ.

C-2

- A. What do we use an ambulance for? A. háw míi lōt-hóoṅmṳ́ wàj sǎmlāp njǎṅ?
- B. We use an ambulance for transporting sick persons. B. háw míi lōt-hóoṅmṳ́ wàj sǎmlāp banthūk khón cép.

C-3

- A. Is it true that an army is for putting out fires? A. kooṅthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp mṳ́ṳ́t fáj mēenbṳ́ṳ́?
- B. No, an army is for defending a country. B. bṳ́ṳ́ mēen, kooṅthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp pṳ́ṳ́ṅkan páthèet.

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ ກຽ ຊີ້ແຈງເຖິງຜູ້ ປະໂຫຍດ ຂອງສິ່ງຂອງແຕ່ລະຢ່າງ ເບິ່ງດູ! ອີ້ ໃດມີໄວ້ສຳລັບຫຍັງ? ຫລື ມີປະໂຫຍດ ຢ່າງໃດ? ແຕ່ງເລື່ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນອີກ ໂດຍພະຍາຍາມ ໃຫ້ມັນກຽວຂ້ອງກັບວຽກງານທີ່ແທ້ຈິງ ຂອງ ກຽ .

NOTES

míi wàj sǎmlāp ' to be on hand for use as ' occurs in the construction:

NP + míi wàj sǎmlāp + VP

móoṅ míi wàj sǎmlāp bṳ́ṳ́k wéeláa

'A watch is for telling time.'

The negative of this construction seldom occurs. It is

NP + bṳ́ṳ́ mēen + míi wàj sǎmlāp

kéep bṳ́ṳ́ mēen míi wàj sǎmlāp

' Shoes are not for

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English.

- (a) kh̄yaŋćak n̄i míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ khôj koo bōo hùu.
- (b) p̄aakkaa mēen khǒoŋ th̄i h́aw míi wàj sǎmlāp kh̄ian.
- (c) p̄yyn míi wàj sǎmlāp p̄oŋ kan tua.
- (d) aah̄aan míi wàj sǎmlāp liaŋ síiwit khǒoŋ khón lū? sát.
- (e) ŋúa lū? khwáaj sūan màak jūu náj eesía míi wàj sǎmlāp sàj wìak.
- (f) p̄ym āan míi wàj sǎmlāp āan lū? p̄ym kh̄ian míi wàj sǎmlāp kh̄ian.
- (g) p̄ym lāw n̄i míi wàj sǎmlāp c̄uŋk-jaaj h̄aj nāk-h́ian thāw n̄an.
- (h) kēep bōo mēen míi wàj sǎmlāp sāj h̄ua tēe míi wàj sǎmlāp sāj tiin.
- (i) s̄o-kh̄aaw míi wàj sǎmlāp kh̄ian sāj kádaan.
- (j) màj banthāt míi wàj sǎmlāp kh̄it sēn.

CYCLE -75

M-1

In the past	tēɛkɔ̃n	ແຕ່ກ່ອນ
Previously	tēɛkɔ̃n	ແຕ່ກ່ອນ
In the past	tēɛkìi	ແຕ່ກີ້
Previously	tēɛkìi	ແຕ່ກີ້
Time	njám	ຍາມ
Period	njám	ຍາມ
When	m̄ya	ເມື່ອ
Before	kɔ̃n	ກ່ອນ
First	kɔ̃n	ກ່ອນ
Day	m̄y	ມື້
Night	khýyn	ຄື
Last night	m̄y khýyn n̄i	ມື້ຄືນນີ້
Finish	lèɸw	ແລ້ວ
Over	lèɸw	ແລ້ວ
Last	lèɸw	ແລ້ວ

Where were you previously?	tēɛkɔ̃n càw j̄u sǎj?	ແຕ່ກ່ອນ ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
Where were you previously?	tēɛkìi càw j̄u sǎj?	ແຕ່ກີ້ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
Where were you at the time that I was sick?	njám khôj b̄ɔ sábaaj càw j̄u sǎj?	ຍາມຂ້ອຍບໍ່ສະບາຍ ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
Where were you two years ago?	m̄ya s̄ɔw pi i kɔ̃n càw j̄u sǎj?	ເມື່ອສອງປີກ່ອນ ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
Where were you last night?	m̄y khýyn n̄i càw j̄u sǎj?	ມື້ຄື ນີ້ ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
Where were you last Monday?	m̄y wánca n̄i lèɸw n̄i càw j̄u sǎj?	ມື້ວ ຈັ ແລ້ວນີ້ ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?

M-2

Present	pátcúban	ປັດຈຸບັນ
Nowadays	pátcúban	ປັດຈຸບັນ
Stationed	pácám	ປະຈຳ
Near	mōw	ມີ່
Close	mōw	ມີ່
Recently	m̄ya mōw mōw nìi	ເມື່ອມຸ່ງນີ້
Long time	don	ດີ
Not long ago	m̄ya bōw don nìi	ເມື່ອບໍ່ດົນນີ້
Pass	kaaj	ກາຍ
Go past	kaaj	ກາຍ
Last year	p̄ii kaaj nìi	ປີກາຍນີ້
Now	diaw nìi	ດຽວນີ້
At the present	diaw nìi	ດຽວນີ້

Presently he is being sent to be stationed at Pakse.	pátcúban nìi láaw th̄ȳyk sō̄ŋ paj pácám jūu p̄âaksée.	ປັດຈຸບັນນີ້ ລາວຖືກສົ່ງໄປປະຈຳຢູ່ປາກເຊ.
Recently he was sent to be stationed at Pakse.	m̄ya mōw mōw nìi láaw th̄ȳyk sō̄ŋ paj pácám jūu p̄âaksée.	ເມື່ອບໍ່ດົນນີ້ ລາວຖືກສົ່ງໄປປະຈຳຢູ່ປາກເຊ.
Not long ago he was sent to be stationed at Pakse.	m̄ya bōw don nìi láaw th̄ȳyk sō̄ŋ paj pácám jūu p̄âaksée.	ເມື່ອບໍ່ດົນນີ້ ລາວຖືກສົ່ງໄປປະຈຳຢູ່ປາກເຊ.
Last year he was sent to be stationed at Pakse.	p̄ii kaaj nìi láaw th̄ȳyk sō̄ŋ paj pácám jūu p̄âaksée.	ປີກາຍນີ້ ລາວຖືກສົ່ງໄປປະຈຳຢູ່ປາກເຊ.
Now he is being sent to be stationed at Pakse.	diaw nìi láaw th̄ȳyk sō̄ŋ paj pácám jūu p̄âaksée.	ດຽວນີ້ ລາວຖືກສົ່ງໄປປະຈຳຢູ່ປາກເຊ.

C-1

- A..Where is he stationed now? A. diaw n̄i láaw pácam jūu sǎj?
 B. Right now he is stationed at Pakse. B. diaw n̄i láaw pácam jūu p̄aksée.

C-2

- A. Where was he before? A. t̄ēkōon láaw jūu sǎj?
 B. Before he was in Laos. B. t̄ēkōon láaw jūu m̄yaŋ láaw

C-3

- A. What was he doing there? A. láaw hēt njǎŋ jūu hân?
 B. He was sent to be stationed there. B. láaw th̄yik sōŋ paj pácam jūu hân.

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ກຽມ ຖາມກັ ເຖິງເບື້ອງຫລັງຂອງເຂົາເບິ່ງດູ່ວ່າ ເວລາໃດ ຜູ້ໃດເຮັດຫຍັງ? ຢູ່ໃສ? ແລະ ດີ ປາ ໃດ? ຫລືວ່າ ມີເຫດກາ ຕ່າງໆເປັ ໄປໃ ທຳ ອງໃດນຶ່ງ? ຕະຫລອດທັງປະສົບກາ ຕ່າງໆ ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ..

NOTES

1) The following list of time expressions is given for your convenience:

(a) Days of the week in order:
wán-can, wán-aŋkháan, wán-phūt, wán-phāhát,

wán-súk, wán-sǎw, wán-aa-thīt.

(b) Months of the year in order¹
mōkkáráa, kumpháa, míináa, méesǎa,

ph̄ytsá-pháa, mī-thú-náa, koorā-kádaa, sīŋ-hǎa, kan-njáa, tú-?-láa

ph̄ytsáci-kaa, thánwáa.

(c) m̄ȳy n̄i 'today', m̄ȳy wáan n̄i 'yesterday', m̄ȳy ȳyn 'tomorrow',
m̄ȳy h̄ȳy 'day after tomorrow', m̄ȳy s̄ȳyn 'day before yesterday'.

(d) t̄ǎ ǎ kC C 'previously', 'before', sC!C pii kC C '2 years ago'.
t̄ǎ ǎ kŋi

aathit lèew nìi 'the last week', m̄ya m̄o m̄o nìi 'recently'

m̄ya b̄o don máa nìi 'not long ago',

m̄yy wán-ajkháan lèew nìi 'last Tuesday',

m̄yy wán-súk nàa 'next Friday', pii kaa nìi 'last year'

diaw nIj 'now', pii na³a 'next year', naj welela n'an 'at that time'.
pa|tcu|ba nIj

(e) náj dyan mī-thú-náa pii phán kàw hòoj hóksíp háa 'in June 1965',

m̄ya wéeláa khôj jūu . . . 'when I was living in ...', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) _____ pii 1967 khôj jūu m̄yan wíañcan.

(In August 1967 I was living in Vientiane.)

(b) _____ láaw paj jiam-jaam phyan láaw jūu hooṁm̄o.

(Last Thursday he went to visit his friend in the hospital.)

(c) khôj dàj hùucák káp ỳaj láaw m̄ya _____ n̄ṅs̄y jūu sájn̄oṅ.

(I met his older sister when I was studying in Saigon.)

(d) _____ láaw kamlán ān p̄ym thīi nāa s̄oncaj h̄uā n̄ṅ.

(He is reading an interesting book at the present time.)

(e) _____ khôj dàj khīi h̄ya paj p̄aksée.

(Not long ago I went to Pakse by boat.)

(f) _____ khôj njāj thāaj-h̄up b̄o pen.

(Last year I still didn't how to take pictures.)

(g) càw ka? wāa ca? púk h̄yan _____ bo?

(Do you expect to build a house next month?)

(h) _____ láaw pháa khá-càw paj līn náj m̄yan.

(Last night he took them out on the town.)

(i) _____ khāw khôj b̄o njāj cák mēt.dian n̄i khôj m̄i hók th̄oṅ.

(Two weeks ago I didn't have any rice left. Now I have six bags.)

- (j) sǎn-njǎa nìi dàj sén kan
(This contract was signed not long ago.)
- (k) _____ láaw njǎŋ thýyk khǎŋ jūu bōō?
(Was he still locked up last Tuesday?)
- (l) _____ láaw dàj sàj nìi khǒōŋ láaw con mót.
(Recently he paid off all his debts.)
- (m) khōj dàj ôok câak thā-hǎan _____ 1945.
(I left military service on September 19, 1945.)
- (n) khá-càw thýyk pōōj tua mỳy khýyn nìi _____
(They were released last night at 10:30 p.m.)
- (o) _____ khōj bōō míi wìak hēt.
(I was out of work last year.)
- (p) _____
láaw hēt-kaan jūu sá-thǎanthùut áméelikan jūu mýaŋ wíaŋcan.
(At present he works at the American Embassy in Vientiane.)
- (q) àaj láaw sǎa síi-wít mýa _____ pii kaaj nìi.
(Her older brother died in July last year.)
- (r) _____ khōj _____ déknòoj khōj māk hían wī?sáa phúu-mī-sâat.
(When I was a child, I like to study geography.)
- (s) _____
khōj njǎŋ hían naŋŋ-syŋly jūu thīi mǎhǎawithā-njǎaláj óp-lóm khúu.
(At that time I was still studying at the teacher training college.)
- (t) _____ mǎŋ khōj dàj máa jaam phùak khōj.
(The day before yesterday my mother came to visit us.)
- (u) _____ khōj khâw nóon wéeláa síp móoŋ khŋŋ.
(Every night I go to bed at 10:30 p.m.)

Answers: l (l) mýa mōō mōō máa nìi (m) mýa wánthíi síp kàw kan njǎa
(n) wéeláa síp móoŋ khŋŋ (o) pii kaaj nìi (p) pátcúban nìi (q) dyan

koorākádaa (r) mýa wéeláa ... njǎŋ pen .." (s) wéeláa nàn (t) mỳy sýyn

(u) thūk thūk khýyn (v) dyan thán wáa (w) njǎŋ ... jūu (x) thūk thūk mỳy
(y) pácam sáppádaa

(v) khôj si dàj phòo láaw jūu thīi mýaη síkháakoo náj _____ nâa.
(I'll get to meet her in Chicago next December.)

(w) mýa wéeláa bāaj sǒoη móoη láaw _____ nóon _____
(He was still asleep at 2:00 p.m.)

(x) hàan khǎaj khǒoη jūu náj mýaη wíaηcan pǎt wéeláa kàw mòoη sàw _____

(Shops in Vientiane open at 9:00 a.m. every day.)

(y) khôj hāp cǒoη nǎηsý-phím _____ nýη sá-báp.
(I subscribe to a weekly newspaper.)

CYCLE- 76

M-1

After	lǎṅ cāak	ຫລັງຈາກ
Move	njàaj	ຍ້າຍ
Join	tōo	ຕໍ່
Extend	tōo	ຕໍ່
Next	tōo paj	ຕໍ່ໄປ
Later on (future)	tōo paj	ຕໍ່ໄປ
next, later on (past)	tōo máa	ຕໍ່ມາ

After that he will get to move lǎṅ cāak nàṅ láaw si dàj njàaj ṁok paj jūu bàan nōok. ຫລັງຈາກນັ້ນລາວຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍອອກໄປຢູ່ບ້າ ອກ.

After this he will get to move lǎṅ cāak nìi láaw si dàj njàaj ṁok paj jūu bàan nōok. ຫລັງຈາກນີ້ລາວຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍອອກໄປຢູ່ບ້າ ອກ.

Later on he got to move tōo máa láaw dàj njàaj ṁok pajjūu bàan nōok. ຕໍ່ມາລາວຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍອອກໄປຢູ່ບ້າ ອກ.

Then he will get to move tōo paj láaw si dàj njàaj ṁok paj jūu bàan nōok. ຕໍ່ໄປລາວ ຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍອອກໄປຢູ່ບ້າ ອກ.

M-2

From	tēɛ	ແຕ່
Since then	tēɛ nàɴ mǎa	ແຕ່ນັ້ນມາ
From now on	tēɛ nìi paj	ແຕ່ນີ້ໄປ
Until	con	ຈົ
Reach	thǎŋ	ເຖິງ
Get to	thǎŋ	ເຖິງ
Soon	náj mōɔ mōɔ nìi	ໃນມຸ່ງນີ້
Future	á-náa-khōt	ອະ າຄົດ
Near	kàj	ໃກ້
Fast	wáj	ໄວ
In the very near	náj wáj wáj nìi	ໃ ໄວງນີ້

From that time on, did he get to move anywhere?	tēɛ nàɴ mǎa láaw dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	ແຕ່ນັ້ນມາ ລາວໄດ້ຍ້າຍໄປໃສບໍ່?
From now on will he get to move anywhere?	tēɛ nìi paj láaw si dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	ແຕ່ນີ້ໄປ ລາວຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍໄປໃສບໍ່?
In the near future will he get to move anywhere?	náj ánáakhōt an kàj nìi láaw si dàj njáaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	ໃນອານາຄົດອັນໃກ້ນີ້ ລາວຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍໄປໃສບໍ່?
In the very near future will he get to move anywhere?	náj wáj wáj nìi láaw si dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	ໃ ໄວງ ລາວຊິໄດ້ຍ້າຍໄປໃສບໍ່?

C-1

- A. Later on did he get to move anywhere? A. tōɔ mǎa láaw dàj
 B. Yes, later on he got to move out to the country side. B. dàj njàaj, tōɔ mǎa lǎpáaksée. aw dàj njàaj wɔk paj jūu bǎan nòɔk

C-2

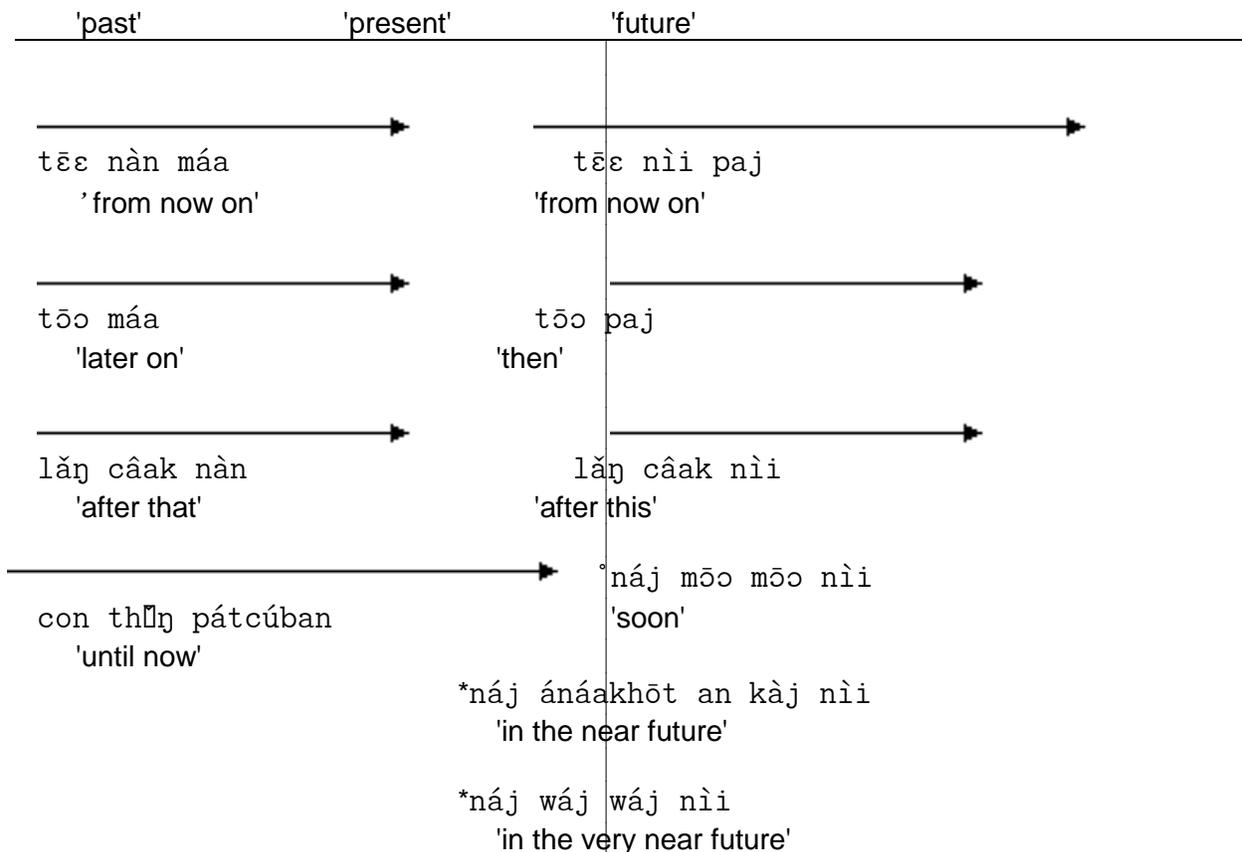
- A. He will be transferred very soon, is that right?

- A. láaw si thýyk njàaj áj wáj wáj nìi, mēen boo?
 B. That's right, he will be transferred very soon.
 A. Where will he be transferred to?
 B. He will be transferred out and stationed in the countryside.
- B. mēen lèuww, láaw si thýyk njàaj náj wáj wáj nìi.
 A. láaw si thýyk njàaj paj sǎj?
 B. láaw si thýyk njàaj óok paj pácam jūu bàn nòok.

ການຝຶກຊ້ອມທີ່ຕີຢ່າງນຶ່ງ ສຳລັບບົດຮຽນນີ້ ກໍຄື ກາ ແຕ່ງເລື່ອງປະກອບ ເພາະມີຄຳສັບກ່ຽວກັບເວລາ ຫລາຍຄຳ. ທ່າ ຈະສາມາດເລົ່າເລື່ອງ ຕັ້ງແຕ່ອະດີດໄປຈີ ເຖິງອະ າຄົດໄດ້ ຢ່າງບໍ່ມີຢັ ຫາເລີຍ.

NOTES

- 1) Certain types of time expressions can only be explained with reference to the 'present time'. On the diagram below 'present time' is represented by the line in the center of the page.



APPLICATION

1) Read the sentences below carefully and apply the time expression that fits the best.
In some cases more than one answer is acceptable.

(a) láaw jūu h́yan lăj nìi máa tàn tēε m̀y láaw k̀t _____
láaw koo nján bōo d̀j nj̀aj paj sǎj.

(b) láaw kh̀j th̀yk taml̀at cáp th̀a n̄j _____
láaw bōo k̀a kháp l̀t wáj.

(c) láaw bōo kh̀j tàncaj h́an láaw c̀j s̄j bōo d̀j. m̀y nìi láaw d̀j bōok k
áp phōo m̀j láaw wā _____ láaw si tàncaj h́an lăj kwā tēε kōn.

(d) m̀a s̄i pii kōn láaw d̀j kh̄n paj kamkápwiak jūu th̀a ph̀ak n̄a
_____ láaw d̀j th̀yk nj̀aj l̀j paj ph̀ak t̀j, l̄? diawǹi láaw koo nján jūu
h̄n.

(e) diawǹi láaw kaml̀j h́an kaan h̀ks̄a khwáam sa?-âat kh̀ancák _____
_____ láaw
ca? d̀j h́an kaan s̀omp̄j.

(f) wéeláa kh̀j paj j̀amjaam láaw m̀a s̄j dyan kōn láaw bōo sá-baaj lăj
l̄? wéeláa kh̀j câak láaw máa láaw koo nján bōo sáv _____
s̄j aathit láaw koo mót-bun.

(g) l̀t-fáj khán nìi máa ẁj nìi m̀y nìi pen th̀a s̀t-th̀aj _____
khá-c̀w si bōo aw mán l̄en íik.

(h) kh̀j d̀j h̄p c̀t-m̀aj câak ph̀an kh̀j m̀y s̀w nìi, láaw kh̄n bōok kh̀
j wā
_____ láaw si pháa kh̀p-kh́a láaw máa jaam kh̀j, baanh̄i âat-ca?
m̄en aathit n̄a.

(i) dian nìi m̄a láaw kaml̀j th̀y-pháa _____

_____ dare

_____ die
_____ to be pregnant

láaw koo ca? dàj pen phōo khón.

(j)

láaw sòok-hǎa khón kháp-lōt khǒoŋ láaw phō?wāa ph̄yan láaw s̄yŋ máa cáak
tāaŋ páthèet ca? máa-hòot d̄l̄n-njón _____,
láaw hòon-caj phō? láaw
jàan wāa ca? paj sàa.

-anxious, uneasy

CYCLE-77

M-1

How much longer	îik don paandaj	ອີກດີ ປາ ໃດ
How many more years	îik cák pii	ອີກຈັກປີ
How much farther	îik kaj paandaj	ອີກໄກປາ ໃດ
How many more days	îik cák mỳy	ອີກຈັກມື້
How many more hours	îik cák sūa-móon	ອີກຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ

How much longer will you be here?	càw si jūu nīi îik don paandaj?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ຢູ່ນີ້ ອີກດີ ປາ ໃດ?
How many more years will you be in the service?	càw si pen thā-hāan îik cák pii?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ເປັນ ທະຫານ ອີກຈັກປີ?
How much farther will you walk?	càw si njān paj îik kaj paandaj?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ໄປ ອີກໄກປາ ໃດ?
How many more days will you be confined in the hospital?	càw si nóon jūu hoonmǎo îik cák mỳy?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ ອ ຢູ່ໂຮງໝໍ ອີກຈັກມື້?
How many more hours will you be working here?	càw si hēt-wiāk jūu nīi îik cák sūa-móon?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ນີ້ ອີກຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ?
How many more years will you live here?	càw si aasǎj jūu nīi îik cák pii?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ອາໄສຢູ່ນີ້ ອີກຈັກປີ?

M-2

Two more weeks	îik sǎwṅ aathīt	ອີກສອງອາທິດ
About two or three days	îik cák sǎwṅ sǎam mỳy	ອີກຈັກສອງ-ສາມມື້
About six or seven more months	îik pámaān hók cét dyan	ອີກປະມາ ຫົກຫຼືເຈັດເດືອນ
Approximately ten more students	nākhían îik náj láaw síp khón	ກຽ ອີກໃ ລາວສິບຄົນ
Between 15 to 20 books	náj lāwāṅ síphāa hǎa sáaw hǎa	ໃ ລະຫວ່າງສິບຫ້າຫາ ຊາວຫົວ

I will study Lao language for two more weeks.	khôj si hían pháasǎa láaw îik sǎwṅ aathīt.	ຂ້ອຍຊິຮຽນ ພາສາລາວອີກສອງອາທິດ.
I will stay here for about two or three more days.	khôj si phāk jūu nīi îik cák sǎwṅ sǎam mỳy.	ຂ້ອຍຊິຢັກຢູ່ນີ້ ອີກຈັກສອງ-ສາມມື້.
I will be working here for about six or seven more months.	khôj si hētkaan jūu nīi îik pámaān hók cét dyan.	ຂ້ອຍຊິເຮັດການຢູ່ນີ້ ອີກປະມາ ຫົກ-ເຈັດເດືອນ .
I will have approximately ten more students.	khôj si míi nākhían îik náj láaw síp khón.	ຂ້ອຍ ຊິມີ ກຽ ອີກໃ ລາວສິບຄົນ .
I will be able to buy between 15 to 20 more books.	khǒj si sỳy pỳm dàj îik náj lāwāṅ síphāa hǎa sáaw hǎa.	ຂ້ອຍຊິຊື້ປຶ້ມໄດ້ອີກ ໃ ລະຫວ່າງສິບຫ້າຫາຊາວຫົວ.

M-3

Leave the military	ôok câak thā-hăan	ອອກຈາກທະຫາ
Receive salary	dàj hāp ṅ'ndyan	ໄດ້ຮັບເງິ ເດືອ
Arrive (here)	máa hòot	ມາຮອດ
Study	hían	ຮຽ
Complete	sāmlēt	ສໍາເລັດ
Join the military	khāw pen thāthăan	ເຂົ້າເປັ ທະຫາ
Leave	câak paj	ຈາກໄປ
Go away	câak paj	ຈາກໄປ

How much longer before he gets to leave the service?	njáj ũik don paandaj láaw [cŷŋ] si dàj ôok câak thāthăan?	ຍັງອີກດີ ປາ ໃດ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິ ໄດ້ ອອກຈາກທະຫາ ?
How many more weeks before he gets his salary?	njáj ũik cák aahit [cŷŋ] si dàj hāp ṅ'ndyan?	ຍັງອີກຈັກອາທິດ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິ ໄດ້ ຮັບເງິ ເດືອ ?
About how many more hours before he arrives?	njáj ũik pámaan cák sŷa-móonj láaw [cŷŋ] si máa hòot?	ຍັງອີກປະມາ ຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິມາຮອດ?
Approximately how many more years before he finishes his studies?	njáj ũik náj láaw cák pi láaw [cŷŋ] si hían sāmlēt?	ຍັງອີກໃ ລາວຈັກປີ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິ ຮຽ ສໍາເລັດ?
How many more month before he joins the service?	njáj ũik cák dyan láaw [cŷŋ] si khāw pen thāthăan?	ຍັງອີກຈັກເດືອ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິເຂົ້າ ເປັ ທະຫາ ?
How many more minutes before he leaves you?	njáj ũik cák náathíi láaw [cŷŋ] si câak càw paj?	ຍັງອີກຈັກ າທິ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິຈາກ ເຈົ້າໄປ?
How many more days before he finishes fixing cars?	njáj ũik cák mÿy láaw [cŷŋ] si puuŋlōt lèuŋw?	ຍັງອີກຈັກມື້ ລາວຈົ່ງຊິ ແປງ ລົດເລ້ວ?

M-4

Four	sīi	ສີ່
Hour	sūa-móoᅇ	ຊົ່ວໂມງ
Not a very long time	bōo don paandaj	ບໍ່ດົ ປາ ໃດ
Not many hours	bōo lǎaj sūa-móoᅇ	ບໍ່ຫລາຍຊົ່ວໂມງ
Four or five days	sīi hāa mỳy	ສີ່-ຫ້າມື້
Less than a month	bōo thᅇᅇᅇ dyan	ບໍ່ເຖິງເດືອນ
Not more than three weeks	bōo kᅇᅇᅇn sǎam aathīt	ບໍ່ເກີ ສາມອາທິດ
Exactly half an hour	khᅇᅇᅇ sūa-móoᅇ phóodii	ເຄິ່ງຊົ່ວໂມງພໍດີ

In about four more hours.	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik pámaán sīi sūa-móoᅇ.	ຍັງອີກປະມາ ສີ່ຊົ່ວໂມງ.
In not much longer.	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik bōo don paandaj.	ຍັງອີກບໍ່ດົ ປາ ໃດ.
In not many more hours.	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik bōo lǎaj sūa-móoᅇ.	ຍັງອີກບໍ່ຫລາຍຊົ່ວໂມງ.
In four or five days	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik sīi hāa mỳy.	ຍັງອີກສີ່-ຫ້າມື້.
In less than a month.	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik bōo thᅇᅇᅇ dyan.	ຍັງອີກບໍ່ເຖິງເດືອນ .
In not more than three weeks.	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik bōo kᅇᅇᅇn sǎam aathīt.	ຍັງອີກບໍ່ເກີ ສາມອາທິດ.
In exactly half an hour.	njǎᅇᅇ ᅇik khᅇᅇᅇ sūa-móoᅇ phóodii.	ຍັງອີກເຄິ່ງຊົ່ວໂມງພໍດີ.

C-1

A. How much longer will you studying the Lao language?

B. I'll be studying Lao for thirty more weeks.

A. càw si hían pháasâa láaw îik don paandaj?

B. khôj si hían pháasâa láaw îik sǎam síp aa-thīt.

C-2

A. About how many more year will you be in the service?

B. I'll be in the service for about two more years.

A. càw si pen thā-hǎan îik pámáan cák pii?

B. khôj si pen thā-hǎan îik pámáan sǒoŋ pii.

C-3

A. Approximately how many more hours will you walk?

B. I'll walk for approximately two more hours.

A. càw si njāaŋ paj îik náj láaw cák sūa-móoŋ?

B. khôj si njāaŋ paj îik náj láaw sǒoŋ sūa móoŋ.

C-4

A. How many more weeks will you be with her?

B. I'll be with her about two or three more weeks.

A. càw si jūu nám láaw îik cák aathīt?

B. khôj si jūu nám láaw îik cák sooj sǎam aathīt

C-5

A. How many more hours before he arrives?

B. In not many more hours.

A. njáŋ îik cák sūa-móoŋ láaw [cŷŋ] si máa hòot?

B. njáŋ îik bōo lǎaj sūa-móoŋ

C-6

A. How much longer before he gets his salary?

B. In not more than two weeks.

A. njáŋ îik don paandaj láaw [cŷŋ] si dàj hāp ŋéndyan?

B. njáŋ îik bōo k'ŋn sǒoŋ aathīt.

C-7

A. How many more month before he gets out of the service?

B. In less than a month.

A. njáŋ îik cák dyan láaw [cŷŋ] si dàj ôok thā-hǎan?

B. njáŋ îik bōo thǎŋ dyan

C-8

A. How much longer before he arrives [there]?

B. In one and a half more hours.

A. njáŋ îik don paandaj láaw [cŷŋ] si paj thǎŋ?

B. njáŋ îik pá-máan khǎŋ sūa-móoŋ

ຄຳວ່າ"ຍັງ"ນີ້ ັກຮຽ ກໍ່ເຄີຍໄດ້ຮຽ ມາກ່ອ ແລ້ວ, ມີແຕ່ "ອີກ" ເທົ່ານັ້ນທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງຫັດໃຊ້. ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ ັກຮຽ ຖາມ ກັ ເບິ່ງວ່າ ຍັງອີກດີ ບາ ໃດໃຜ ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ? ຫລືຍັງອີກດີ ບາ ໃດຈະມີເຫດກາ ຢ່າງໃດຢ່າງ ັ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນ? ແລະ ຕໍ່ນັ້ນໄປເດ?

NOTES

- 1) îik means 'to be more, additional'. When it is followed by Time Expressions, it refers to a period of time beginning at the present and continuing. The focus is on the amount of time involved.

khôj si pen thā-hǎan îik hók pii. 'I will be a soldier for six more years.'

- 2) nján îik + Time Expressions also refers to a period of time beginning at the present time and continuing, but the focus is on an event which will take place after a certain period of time.

nján îik hók pii khôj [cÿŋ] 'In six more years I'll get out of the service.'
si dàj ôok thā-hǎan.

nján îik + Time Expression at the beginning of the sentences; whereas, îik + Time Expression comes at the end.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw si jyyn jūu hân
(How many more minutes will she stand there?)
- (b) khôj si sǒon jūu hóonhían nìi
(I'll teach at this school for approximately 3 more years.)
- (c) láaw si tòon tii cák
(How much longer will she have to type?)
- (d) _____ khâw-cīi láaw koo si mót.
(In about 2 more days he will be out of bread.)
- (e) láaw si nóon
(How much longer will she be asleep?)
- (f) láaw khónj ca? sūanjsáw pháaj náj wéeláa
(It will not be more than three weeks before he recovers.)

- (g) khôj si bōo thāa jūu nīi
(I will not wait here many minutes more.)
- (h) _____ hók sūa-móoη khôj koo si mýa bàn.
(In less than six hours more I'll go home.)
- (i) _____ láaw koo si lᵀk kaan.
(In about 10 minutes more he'll be out of work.)
- (j) _____ pým koo si lèew.
(In 5 or 6 more days the book will be finished.)
- (k) _____ láaw cýη si thýyk keen khāw pen thā-hǎan?
(How many more weeks before he gets drafted into the army?)
- (l) càw ka? wāa ca? jýy nīi _____ ?
(How much longer do you plan to stay here?)
- (m) _____ mýy khôj koo si dàj phòo láaw.
(In less than half a day I will have the opportunity to meet him.)
- (n) _____ khôj koo si ôok kin bìa bamnāan.
(It will not be very many more years before I retire.)
- (o) càw si paj pásúm jūu tāaη páthèet _____ ?
(How many more weeks will you go to attend the conference abroad.)
- (p) _____ khôj koo si paj nóon dàj.
(It will not be many more hours before I can go to bed.)
- (q) càw si sýy pým
(How many more books will you buy?)
- (r) háw njáη míi wéeláa hían
(How much more time do we have to study?)

2) Cover the Lao and see if you can translate the English back into Lao.

CYCLE- 78

M-1

Normally	taam thámmādaa	ຕາມທຳມະດາ
Mainly	sūanmàak	ສ່ວນ ມາກ
Sometimes	láaṅ thŷa	ລາງເທື່ອ
Some days	láaṅ mỳy	ລາງມື້
Generally	dooj thūa paj	ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ
In particular	dooj sá-phō	ໂດຍສະເພາະ
Sometimes	baaṅ wéeláa	ບາງເວລາ

What kind of food do they normally like to eat?	taam thámmādaa khá-càw māk kin aahāan nūṅṅw daj?	ຕາມທຳມະດາ ຂະເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫານ ແ ວໃດ?
What kind of food do they mainly like eat?	sūanmàak khá-càw māk kin aahāan nūṅṅw daj?	ສ່ວນ ມາກ ຂະເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫານ ແ ວໃດ?
What kind of food do they like to eat generally?	dooj thūa paj lèṅṅw khá-càw māk kin aahāan nūṅṅw daj?	ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ ຂະເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫານ ແ ວໃດ?
What kind of food do they like to eat in particular?	dooj sá-phō, lèṅṅw khá-càw māk kin aahāan nūṅṅw daj?	ໂດຍສະເພາະແລ້ວ ຂະເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫານ ແ ວໃດ?

M-2

Spicy food	aahăan phét	ອາຫາ ເຜັດ
Salty food	aahăan khém	ອາຫາ ເຄັມ
Sweets	khǒᵛᵛwăan	ຂອງຫວາ
Sour food	aahăan sôm	ອາຫາ ສົ້ມ
Bland food	aahăan cÿyt	ອາຫາ ຈິດ
Native food	aahăan phÿyn	ອາຫາ ພື້ນເມືອງ
Exotic food	aahăan taaᵇ pathet	ອາຫາ ຕ່າງປະເທດ

They normally like to eat spicy food. taamthámmadaa khá-càw māk kin aahăan phét. ຕາມທຳມະດາ ເຂົາເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫາ ເຜັດ.

They mainly like eat salty food. sūanmàak khá-càw māk kin aahăan khém. ສ່ວນ ມາກ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ມັກກິ ອາຫາ ເຄັມ.

Sometimes they like to have sweets. láajthÿa khá-càw māk kin khǒᵛᵛwăan. ລາງເທື່ອ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ມັກກິ ຂອງຫວາ .

Some days they like eat sour food. láaᵇ mÿy khá-càw māk kin aahăan sôm. ລາງມື້ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ມັກກິ ອາຫາ ສົ້ມ

Generally they like bland food. dooj thūa paj lèᵛᵛw khá-càw māk kin aahăan cÿyt. ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວເຂົາເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫາ ຈິດ.

Particularly they like to eat native food. dooj sáphō, lèᵛᵛw khá-càw māk kin aahăan phÿyn mÿaᵇ. ໂດຍສະເພາະແລ້ວ ເຂົາເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫາ ພື້ນເມືອງ.

Sometimes they like to eat exotic food. baᵇ wéeláa khá-càw māk kin aahăan taaᵇ páthèet. ບາງເວລາ ເຂົາເຈົ້າມັກກິ ອາຫາ ຕ່າງປະເທດ.

C-1

- A. Normally what kind of food do you like to eat? A. tamthámmādaa càw māk kin aahāan nūyūw daj?
- B. Normally I like spicy food B. taamthámmādaakhôj māk kin aahāan phét

C-2

- A. What kind of food will you have? A. càw si kin aahāan nūyūw daj?
- B. I will have Japanese food. B. khôj si kin aahāan njīipūn.
- A. The Japanese food is bland isn't it? A. aahāan njīipūn cýyt, mēen boov?
- B. That's right, normally the Japanese like to eat bland food. B. mēen lèyūw, tam thámmādaa khón njīipūn māk kin aahāan cýyt.

ຂຽ ເລື້ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນອີກ ໂດຍປັດຍາຍເຖິງ ິສັຍ ຂອງບຸກຄົນທີ່ສົມມຸດຂຶ້ນຜູ້ ຶ່ງວ່າ ລາງເທື່ອລາວມັກເຮັດ ຫຍັງ? ແລະ ບາງເວລາອື່ນອີກເດ? ດັ່ງນີ້ຕັ້ງໄປ. ດຽວນີ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານກໍຄວນຈະເວົ້າພາສາ ລາວໄດ້ ຫລາຍເຕີບແລ້ວ. ສະນັ້ນ, ທ່າ ຈິງຊວ ເຂົາເຈົ້າລົມເລື້ອງຕ່າງໆ ທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ ປະຈຳວັ ໂດຍ ໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ມີໂອກາດໄດ້ເວົ້າຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ທັງນີ້ກໍ ເພາະໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າເກີດຄວາມເຄີຍຊື່ ໃ ກາ ສະແດງທັດສະ ະຂອງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ເປັ ພາສາລາວ. ຕໍ່ໄປເຂົາ ເຈົ້າກໍຈະ ຄ່ອຍໆມີຄວາມເຊື່ອນັ້ນໃ ຕີ ເອງ ຫລາຍຍິ່ງໆຂຶ້ນ.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide:

- (a) _____ síp móonj khôj c̄ȳn lūk câak b̄on nóon.
(Normally I don't get up until 10 o'clock.)
- (b) _____ láaw b̄n̄ thóorāthāt jūu con d̄k.
(Sometimes she stays up late watching TV.)
- (c) _____ l̄ew mía khôj b̄o māk m̄a.
(My wife dislikes dogs in particular.)
- (d) náj rā-duu n̄aw _____ f̄on tók mót m̄y.
(Some days in Winter it rains all day.)
- (e) sáaw náa _____ s̄aj khwáaj th̄aj náa khá-c̄aw.
(Most farmers use water buffaloes for plowing rice fields.)
- (f) _____ kin kh̄aw-th̄ian phūu-diaw.
(I usually eat lunch by myself.)
- (g) _____ khôj hēt-wīak náj m̄y wán-s̄aw.
(Normally I work on Saturday.)
- (h) _____ khá-c̄aw kin paa l̄ū? aah̄an th̄alée.
(They mainly eat fish and sea food.)
- (i) _____ láaw w̄aw pháas̄a ān̄kít.
(Normally he speaks English.)
- (j) _____ khôj t̄ōonj th̄a láaw káp bàn th̄n̄j s̄ōonj s̄ūa móonj.
(Sometimes I have to wait 2 hours for her to come home.)
- (k) _____ l̄ew láaw māk máa s̄a sáaw h̄a s̄am síp náa-th̄íi.
(She generally comes 20 to 30 minutes late.)
- (l) _____ l̄ew khôj māk kh̄ōonj w̄an.
(I like dessert in particular.)

CYCLE- 79

M-1

Must	cá, tòvṅ	ຈະຕ້ອງ
Ought to	khúan cá,	ຄວ ຈະ
Might	âat cá,	ອາດຈະ
Be likely	khýy si	ຄືຊິ
It will be necessary	campen tòvṅ	ຈຳເປັນ ຕ້ອງ
Probably	khónṅ cá,	ຄຶງຈະ

If he is going, he must choose a guide.	thaâwāa láaw si paj láaw cá, tòvṅ lỳak aw náaj tháaṅ.	ຖ້າວ່າລາວຊິໄປ ລາວຈະຕ້ອງ ເລືອກເອົາ າຍທາງ.
If he is going, he ought to choose a guide.	thâawāa láaw si paj láaw khúan cá, lỳak aw náaj tháaṅ.	ຖ້າວ່າລາວຊິໄປ ລາວຄວ ຈະ ເລືອກເອົາ າຍທາງ.
If he is going, he might choose a guide.	thâawāa láaw si paj láaw âatcá, lỳak aw náaj tháaṅ.	ຖ້າວ່າລາວຊິໄປ ລາວອາດຈະ ເລືອກເອົາ າຍທາງ.
If he is going, he will be likely to choose a guide.	thâawāa láaw si paj láaw khýy si lỳak aw náaj tháaṅ.	ຖ້າວ່າລາວ ຊິໄປ ລາວຄືຊິ ເລືອກ ເອົາ າຍທາງ.
If he is going, it will be necessary for him to choose a guide.	thâawāa láaw si paj láaw campen tòvṅ lỳak aw náaj tháaṅ.	ຖ້າວ່າລາວ ຊິໄປ ລາວຈຳເປັນ ຕ້ອງເລືອກເອົາ າຍທາງ.
If he is going, he will probably choose a guide.	thâawāa láaw si paj láaw khónṅ cá, lỳak aw náaj tháaṅ	ຖ້າວ່າລາວ ຊິໄປ ລາວຄຶງຈະ ເລືອກ ເອົາ າຍທາງ.

M-2

Be fired	thýyk lāj óok	ຖືກໄລ່ອອກ
Appoint	tēɛŋ tàŋ	ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງ
Chief	hũa nâa	ຫົວໜ້າ
Boss	náaj	າຍ

Chosen to be the chairman	thýyk lýak khỳn pen pátháan	ຖືກເລືອກຂຶ້ນເປັນປະທານ
Decide to let you stay	tátsĩncaj hâj càw jũu	ຕັດສິນໃຈໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຢູ່
Consent to letting you take leave	h'ndii hâj càw láa phāk	ເຫັນດີໃຫ້ເຈົ້າລາໜັກ
Issue an order to arrest him	óok khám sãŋ hâj cáp láaw	ອອກຄໍາສັ່ງໃຫ້ຈັບລາວ
Agree to free them	tóklóngcaj hâj pōwj khá-càw	ຕົກລົງໃຈໃຫ້ປ່ອຍເຂົາເຈົ້າ

Before he goes, he might be fired.	kōon láaw si paj, láaw áat cá, thýyk lāj óok.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະຖືກໄລ່ອອກ.
Before he goes, he might be appointed to be a chief.	kōon láaw si paj láaw áat cá thýyk tēɛŋ tàŋ pen hũa nâa.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະຖືກແຕ່ງຕັ້ງເປັນຫົວໜ້າ.
Before he goes, he might be chosen to be the chairman.	kōon láaw si paj láaw áat cá, thýyk lýak khỳn pen pátháan.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະຖືກເລືອກຂຶ້ນເປັນປະທານ.
Before he goes, he might decide to let you stay.	kōon láaw si paj láaw áat cá, tátsĩncaj hâj càw jũu.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະຕັດສິນໃຈໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຢູ່.
Before he goes, he might consent to letting you take leave.	kōon láaw si paj láaw áat cá h'ndii hâj càw láa phāk.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະເຫັນດີໃຫ້ເຈົ້າລາໜັກ.
Before he goes, he might issue an order to arrest him.	kōon láaw si paj láaw áat cá óok khám sãŋ hâj cáp láaw.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະອອກຄໍາສັ່ງໃຫ້ຈັບລາວ.
Before he goes, he might agree to free them.	kōon láaw si paj láaw áat cá, tóklóngcaj hâj pōwj khá-càw.	ກ່ອນລາວຊິໄປລາວອາດຈະຕົກລົງໃຈໃຫ້ປ່ອຍເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

láaw âat caʔ bōo sábaaj lǎaj 'He may be very ill.'

(d) khýy [caʔ / si] 'may, might'. Similar to âat

khýy si mēen 'It may be so.'

(e) khón [caʔ / si] 'it is likely'. Probability.

láaw khón caʔ bōo hùu 'It is likely that he doesn't know.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw _____

khǎaj khǒon bōo mót dōok phōʔwāa mỳy nìi bōo míi khón paj
tá-lâat lǎaj paandaj.

(She probably won't sell out her goods, since there aren't very many people going to the market today.)

(b) khá-càw bōo míi lōt lṃʔ tháaŋ sēn nìi bōo míi lōt thíaaw khá-càw _____
njāaŋ paj.

(They don't have a car and there are no cars on this road. They must necessarily walk.)

(c) láaw _____ máa phōʔwāa láaw si hēt-wiak lèew mỳy nìi.

(He may come since he will have finished his work today.)

(d) kaan hāksǎa pīnpua hāj jūu sábaaj mēen sīŋ thīi háw _____ hēt.

(Maintaining good health is the thing we must do.)

(e) diaw nìi mán kaaj wéeláa máa dàj sǒon sūa móon lèew láaw _____
bōo máa dōok.

(It's two hours past the time now. He must not be coming at all.)

(f) láaw _____ cāaj ŋén khāa hýan thūk thūk tòn dyan.

(He has to pay the rent on his house at the beginning of each month.)

(g) láaw _____ paj hāp aw mía láaw kōon láaw si paj kin khāw.

(He will have to go pick up his wife before going to eat.)

(h) thāawāa càw khǒothòot nám láaw láaw _____ á-pháj hāj càw.

(If you apologize to him, he may forgive you.)

(i) láaw paj dàj sīi sūa-móon lèew, paan nìi láaw _____
hòot lèew.

He's been going for 4 hours already. He must have arrived by now.)

(j) m̄ya h̄u w̄a m̄n b̄o dii l̄εw, ph̄ak-h̄aw ko b̄o _____ h̄t.
(If (we) know it's not good, we shouldn't do it.)

- (k) phēn _____ bōo kin phō?wāa aahāan nīi phét lǎaj.
(He may not eat since the food is very hot (peppery).)
- (l) dék nòoj _____ s̄ya fánj khám s̄aṅs̄oṅ khǒoṅ phōo m̄uṅ.
(Children should listen to the advice of their parents.)
- (m) m̄ya wéeláa láaw bōo míi kaan hēt láaw koo _____
hǎa ṅén dùaj wīthíi daj wīthíi n̄yṅ. □
During the times when he is out of work, he must seek money by any means or other.)
- (n) láaw _____
taaj phō?wāa thāan mǒo bōo míi jaa ca? hāksāa láaw.
(He may die since the doctor doesn't have any medicine to cure him.)
- (o) láaw _____
paj s̄ȳy kh̄yaṅkin j̄uu tá-lâat phō?wāa láaw bōo míi aahāan.
(He will have to go buy food at the market because he doesn't have any food.)
- (p) m̄ya wéeláa láaw míi ṅén láaw koo _____
thòon ṅén wàj s̄amlāp wéeláa campen.
(When he has money, he should save it for time of need.)
- (q) diaw nīi láaw thūk lǎaj láaw _____ khǒo-thāan kin.
Now he is very poor. He has to beg for food.)
- (r) nām mán lōt bōo lǎaj háw _____ paj bōo hòot.
(There's not much gas in the car, we may not get there.)
- (s) khōj khīt wāa láaw _____
paj bōo dàj dōok phō?wāa láaw míi wìak lǎaj.
(I think he may not be able to go at all because he has a lot of work.)
- (t)
khá-càw hāk kan lǎaj khōj khīt wāa m̄ya wéeláa t̄ēṅ ṅáan kan lèew khá
-càw
_____ míi khwáam súk nám kan.
(They are very much in love. I think they should be very happy after they get married.)
- (u)

Answers: 1

(k) âat cá? (l) khúan (m) campen t̄oṅ (n) âat cá? (o) si t̄oṅ (p) khúan

(q) campen t̄oṅ (r) kh̄ȳy si (s) kh̄ȳy si (t) khónj cá? (u) kh̄ȳy si

(v) t̄oṅ (w) khúan cá? - kh̄ȳy and âat are practically interchangeable and
cá? and si are.

khôj dàj njín wāa láaw jâak paj bŋj cínée tēε don lèεw thāa wāa càw
súan láaw láaw _____ paj.

(I heard she has been wanting to go to the movies for a long time, if you ask her, she may go.)

(v) láaw si _____

paj sòok hǎa khá-càw phō?wāa láaw tòŋkaan khá-càw.

(He will have to go look for them because he needs them.)

(w) phōo mŋŋ _____

sāŋsǎon lùuk khǎŋ ton phya njāj máa khá-càw ca? pen khón dii.

(Parents should train their children so that when they grow up they'll be good people.)

CYCLE- 80

M-1

Laos	mýaη láaw	ເມືອງລາວ
See	hěn	ເຫັນ
Animal	sát	ສັດ
Strange	pálâat	ປະຫລາດ
Taste	síim	ຊົມ
Meat	sìn	ຊີ້ນ
Flesh	sìn	ຊີ້ນ
Water buffalo	khwáaj	ຄວາຍ
Newspaper	năη sŷy phím	ຫ້າງສືພິມ
Criticize	títian	ຕີຕຽງ
Compliment	njòວη	ຍ້ອງ
Drafted	thŷyk keen	ຖືກເກ

Have you ever been to Laos? càw kh^hj dàj paj mýaη láaw ບວວ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍໄດ້ໄປເມືອງລາວບໍ?

Have you ever seen a strange animal? càw kh^hj hěn sát pálâat ບວວ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍເຫັນ ສັດປະຫລາດບໍ?

Have you ever tasted water buffalo meat? càw kh^hj síim sìn khwáaj ບວວ ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍຊົມຊີ້ນຄວາຍບໍ?

Have you ever read the Xat Lao Newspaper? càw kh^hj dàj āan naη-syηy phím sàat láaw ບວວ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍໄດ້ອ່າ ຫ້າງສືພິມ ຊາດລາວບໍ?

Have you ever been criticized? càw kh^hj dàj thŷyk títian ບວວ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍໄດ້ຖືກຕີຕຽງ ບໍ?

Have you ever been complimented by them? càw kh^hj dàj thŷyk khá-càw njòວη njóວ ບວວ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍໄດ້ຖືກເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຍ້ອງຍໍບໍ?

Have you ever been drafted? càw kh^hj dàj thŷyk keen pen thāthāan ບວວ? ເຈົ້າເຄີຍໄດ້ຖືກເກ ເປັ ທະຫາ ບໍ?

M-2

Yes. (I have . . .)	kh ^h roj.	ເຄີຍ.
No. (I have never .)	bōo, njáṅ bōo kh ^h roj.	ບໍ່, ຍັງບໍ່ເຄີຍ.

M-3

Have been to Laos	dàj paj mýaṅ	ໄດ້ໄປເມືອງລາວ
Experiment	thōt ^h lōoṅ	ທົດລອງ

Yes, I have been to Laos many times already.	kh ^h roj, khōj kh ^h roj dàj paj mýaṅ láaw láaj thya lèuṅw.	ເຄີຍ, ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍໄດ້ໄປເມືອງລາວຫລາຍເທື່ອແລ້ວ.
Yes, I have experimented many times already.	kh ^h roj, khōj kh ^h roj dàj thōt ^h lōoṅ láaj thya lèuṅw.	ເຄີຍ, ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍໄດ້ທົດລອງຫລາຍເທື່ອແລ້ວ.

M-4

Use this kind	sàj núuṅw nìi	ໃຊ້ແນວນີ້
Smoke	sūup	ສູບ
Opium	jaa fīn	ຢາຝິນ
Think	khīt	ຄິດ
Get married	tēṅṅ ṅáan	ແຕ່ງງາ

No, I have never used this kind at all.	bōo, khōj njáṅ bōo kh ^h roj dàj sàj núuṅw nìi cákthya.	ບໍ່, ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ເຄີຍໄດ້ໃຊ້ແນວນີ້ຈັກເທື່ອ
No, I have never smoked opium at all.	bōo, khōj njáṅ bōo kh ^h roj dàj sūup jaa fīn cákthya.	ບໍ່, ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ເຄີຍໄດ້ສູບຢາຝິນຈັກເທື່ອ
No, I have never thought of getting married at all.	bōo, khōj njáṅ bōo kh ^h roj khīt cá, tēṅṅ ṅáan cákthya.	ບໍ່, ຂ້ອຍຍັງບໍ່ເຄີຍຄິດຈະແຕ່ງງາ ຈັກເທື່ອ

C-1

- A. Have you ever been criticized? A. *càw kh^hj dàj th^hyk tí?tian b^oo?*
 B. Yes. B. *kh^hj*

C-2

- A. Has he ever been to Laos? A. *láaw kh^hj dàj paj m^hay láaw b^oo?*
 B. No. B. *b^oo, nján b^oo kh^hj*

C-3

- A. Have you ever read the Sat Lao Newspaper? A. *càw kh^hj dàj āan na^hng-sy^hly phím sàat láaw b^oo?*
 B. Yes, I have read the Sat Newspaper two or already. B. *kh^hj, kh^ho^hj kh^hj dàj āan na^hng-sy^hly phím sàat láaw s^oo^h sǎam th^hya l^hu^hw.* Lao three times

C-4

- A. Have you ever been arrested by the police? A. *càw kh^hj dàj th^hyk tamlúat cáp b^oo?*
 B No, I have never been arrested by the police. B. *b^oo, kh^ho^hj nján b^oo kh^hj dàj th^hyk tamlúat cáp cákth^hya.*

ໃນບົດນີ້ກໍມີແຕ່ໃຫ້ຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງ ກ່ຽວກັບກາ ໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ " ເຄີຍ ". ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຄີຍ ຫລື ບໍ່ເຄີຍເຮັດຫຍັງແດ່?

NOTES

- 1) kh^hj + VP is used to indicate that someone has experienced something.

kh^ho^hj kh^hj paj páthèet láaw 'I have been to Laos.'

càw kh^hj pen wát b^oo? 'Have you ever had a cold?'

- 2) th^hyk + VP corresponds roughly to the passive in English. It occurs only with a very limited numbers of verbs, most of which have unpleasant connotations.

càw th^hyk tí?tian b^oo? 'Were you criticized?'

If an Agent is indicated, it occurs after th^hyk before VP:

láaw th^hyk tamlúat cáp. (He was by a policeman arrested)

'He was arrested by the policeman.'

- 3) The two constructions above frequently occur together:

càw kh^hj dàj th^hyk khǎn b^oo? 'Have you ever been locked up?'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) t̄aŋ t̄ɛ khôj k̄t̄t̄ máa khôj _____ h̄n khón phūu n̄n c̄k th̄ya.
(I have never seen that man before in my life.)
- (b) c̄aw _____ tamluat c̄p c̄k th̄ya b̄o?
(Were you ever arrested by the police?)
- (c) n̄oŋ s̄aw khôj kh̄j _____ k̄t s̄am th̄ya l̄ɛw.
(My younger sister was bitten 3 times by a dog.)
- (d) l̄uk s̄aj kók láaw _____
kh̄a taaj [s̄ia síi-w̄it] j̄u n̄j s̄ŋkh̄am.
(Her oldest son was killed in the war.)
- (e) kh̄a-c̄aw _____ paj j̄u m̄yaŋ l̄uaŋ ph̄baaŋ.
(They have never lived in Luang Prabang.)
- (f) pii kaaj n̄i láaw pen kh̄j w̄t nj̄aj _____.
(Last year she had the flu 2 times.)
- (g) láaw _____ w̄aaŋ ŋaan c̄k th̄ya.
(He has never been out of a job.)
- (h) c̄aw kh̄j d̄aj paj tiis̄k c̄k th̄ya b̄o? b̄o, _____.
(Have you ever been to war? Not yet.)
- (i) c̄aw _____ keen kh̄w pen th̄-h̄an b̄o?
(Were you drafted? Yes, I was.)
- (j) c̄aw d̄aj āan naŋ-sȳly ph̄im m̄y n̄i _____ b̄o? āan l̄ɛw _____.
(Have you read today's newspaper? Yes, 2 or 3 times.)
- (k) láaw _____ s̄aj n̄i m̄t c̄k th̄ya.
(He has never been completely out of debt.)
- (l) khôj _____ d̄aj h̄ian p̄p̄p̄ l̄t̄.
(I have never learned how to repair cars.)

CYCLE- 81

M-1

Go with me	paj nám khôj	ໄປ ອ້ອຍ
Have	míi	ມີ
Money	ຖ່ນ	ເງິ
Respect	nāpthÿy	ັບຖື
Religion	sâat-sá-năa	ສາສ າ
Buddhism	sâat-sá-năa phūt	ສາສ າພຸດ
Believe in Buddhism	nāpthÿy sâat-sá-năa phūt	ັບຖືສາສ າພຸດ
Exchange for	lèuḁk [aw]	ເລກ (ເອົາ)
Follow	títtaam	ຕິດຕາມ
Keep up	títtaam	ຕິດຕາມ
News	khāaw	ຂ່າວ
Represent	taaḁnāa	ຕາງຫ້າ
Representative	phūu taaḁnāa	ຜູ້ຕາງຫ້າ
Volunteer	aa-săa-sá-mák	ອາສາສມັກ

Is there anybody going with me?	míi phǎj si paj nám khôj bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜຊິໄປ ອ້ອຍບໍ?
Is there anybody who has money?	míi phǎj míi ḁḁn bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜມີເງິ ບໍ?
Is there anyone that believes in Buddhism?	míi phǎj nāpthÿy sâat-sá-năa phūt bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜັບຖືສາດສະຫ າພຸດບໍ?
Is there anybody who wants to exchange (other money) for dollars?	míi phǎj jāak lèuḁk aw ḁḁn doolàa bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜຢາກເລກເອົາ ເງິ ໂດລາບໍ?
Is there anybody who wants to keep up with the news?	míi phǎj jāak títtaam khāaw nìi bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜຢາກຕິດຕາມຂ່າວນີ້ບໍ?
Is there anybody who wants to be our representative?	míi phǎj jāak pen phūu taaḁnāa phùak-háw bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜຢາກເປັ ຜູ້ຕາງຫ້າ ພວກເຮົາບໍ?
Is there anybody who wants volunteer?	míi phǎj jāak aa-săa-sá-mák bɔɔ?	ມີໃຜຢາກອາສາສະຫມັກບໍ?

M-2

Help	sōwjlyǎ	ຊ່ອຍເຫລືອ
Assist	sōwjlyǎ	ຊ່ອຍເຫລືອ
Guarantee	pákan	ປະກັນ
Safety	khwáam pōotpháj	ຄວາມປອດໄພ
Report	láajṅáan	ລາຍງາ
Lay out a plan	wáaṅ phũṅkaan	ວາງແຜ ກາ
Supervise	khùapkhúm	ຄວບຄຸມ
Give them advice	háj khám nṽ, nám	ໃຫ້ຄໍາແ ະ ັ

Yes, we will go help them.	míi, phùakháw si paj sōwjlyǎ khá-càw.	ມີ, ພວກເຮົາ ຊິໄປຊ່ອຍເຫລືອເຂົາເຈົ້າ
Yes, we will guarantee their safety.	míi, phùakháw si pákan khwáam pōotpháj khṵṵṅ khá-càw.	ມີ, ພວກເຮົາ ຊິປະກັນ ຄວາມປອດໄພ ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ
Yes, we will make reports to him.	míi, phùakháw si hēt láajṅáan hāj phṽn.	ມີ, ພວກເຮົາຊິເຮັດລາຍງາ ໃຫ້ເພິ່ນ.
Yes, we will lay out the plan.	míi, phùakháw si pen phũu wáaṅ phũṅkaan.	ມີ, ພວກເຮົາຊິເປັ ຜູ້ວາງແຜ ກາ .
Yes, we will supervise them.	míi, phùakháw si khùapkhúm khá-càw.	ມີ, ພວກເຮົາ ຊິຄວບຄຸມເຂົາເຈົ້າ

M-3

There is no one to go help them.	bōo míi phǎj si paj sōojlǎa khá-càw.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜ ຊິໄປຊ່ອຍເຫລືອ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ
There is no one to guarantee their safety.	bōo míi phǎj si pákan khwáam pōotpháj khōong khá-càw.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜ ຊິປະກັ ຄວາມປອດໄພ ຂອງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ
There is no one to make reports to them.	bōo míi phǎj hēt láajṅáan háj phṅ.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜເຮັດລາຍງາ ໃຫ້ເພິ່ນ.
There is no one to give advice to them.	bōo míi phǎj háj khám nṅ, nám kṅ khá-càw.	ບໍ່ມີໃຜໃຫ້ຄໍາແ ະ ັກເກ່ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ

C-1

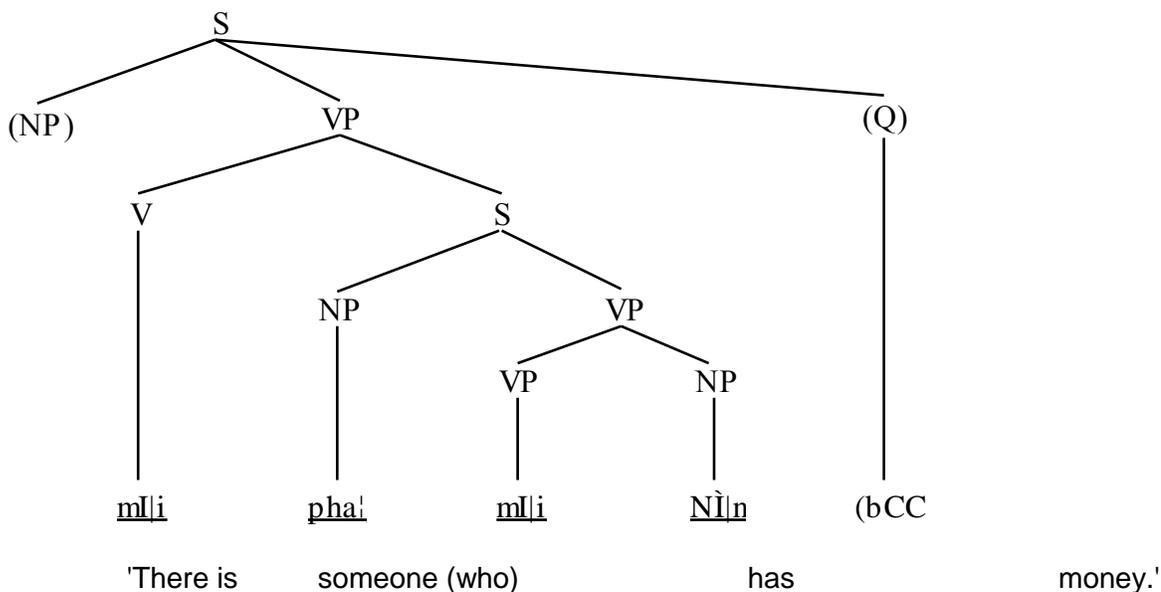
- A. Is there anybody that is going to help him? A. míi phǎj si paj sōojlǎa láaw boo?
 B. Yes, I will go help him. B. míi, khōj si paj sōojlǎa láaw.

C-2

- A. Is there anybody who wants to míi phǎj jáaktíttaam khāaw nṅi boo? A. keep up with this news?
 B. Yes, she wants to keep up with this news. B. míi, láaw jáak títtaam khāaw nṅi.
 A. Is there anybody who wants to volunteer? A. míi phǎj jáak aasāa sámák boo? who
 B. No, nobody does. B. bōo, bōo míi phǎj.

NOTES

- 1) The verb míi may have Sentence Complements when it occurs without NP (Subject).



The indefinite pronoun phǎj 'someone, anyone' (as contrasted with question word phǎj 'who') can not occur as NP (Subject) except in included sentences.

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) bōo míi phǎj jâak paj nám láaw phō-wāa lōt láaw bōo dii.

(b) ph⁷n thǎam wāa míi phǎj jâak ôok paj bàn nòok bōo.

(c)
 láaw wàw wāa míi lǎaj khón jâak hían tùm qm hùup tēε wāa diaw nìi khôj
 nján bōo hěn phǎj máa.

(d)
 khá-càw jâak hùu wāa sí míi phǎj paj bōo lýy bōo míi, thāa-wāa bōo míi
 phūu daj sí paj, láaw sí paj phūu-diaw.

(e) khá-càw jàan wāa sí bōo míi phǎj sǒncaj khá-càw cŷŋ bōo aw máa.

(f) lōt láaw bōo dii cŷŋ bōo míi bōolisát daj jâak hāp pákan.

(g)

jūu náj sá-thăan thùut áméelīkan míi phǎj dàj pháasăa wîat-náam bōō?.

(h) bōō míi phǎj hâj khám nŭ?nám kŭŭŭ láaw, láaw cŷŋ hēt phít.

CYCLE - 82

M-1

Oil	nàmmán	ນ້ຳມັນ
Get from	dàj máa cáak	ໄດ້ມາຈາກ
Pig	mǔu	ໝູ
Water	nàm	ນ້ຳ
Come out of	ôok máa cáak	ອອກມາຈາກ
Eyes	taa	ຕາ
Envoy	thùut	ທູດ
Military	thā-hǎan	ທະຫາ
Crab	kápuu	ກະບູ
Live	aasǎj	ອາໄສ
Sea	thālée	ທະເລ
Fish	paa	ປາ
Fresh water	nàm cýyt	ນ້ຳຈືດ

How do we call liquid that háw ḷn nàm thīi ôok máa
comes out of the eyes? cáak taa wā jāaṅ daj?

ເຮົາເອີ້ນນ້ຳທີ່ອອກມາຈາກ
ຕາ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

How do we call an envoy háw ḷn thùut thīi pen
who is in the military service? thā-hǎan wā jāaṅ daj?

ເຮົາເອີ້ນທູດທີ່ເປັນ ທະຫາ
ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

continued...

M-1 Continued

What do we call crabs that live in the sea?	háv ໂນ kápúu thīi aasǎj jūu náj thālée wāa jāadaj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນກະບູຜູ້ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນທະເລວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?
What do we call fish that live in fresh water?	háv ໂນ paa thīi aasǎj jūu náj nàm cýyt wāa jāan daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນປາທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນນ້ຳຈືດວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

M-2

Lard	nàmmán mǔu	ນ້ຳມັນ ຫມູ
Orange juice	nàm mâakkian	ນ້ຳຫມາກກ້ຽງ
Honey	nàm phᶇᶇ	ນ້ຳເຜີ້ງ
Tears	nàm taa	ນ້ຳຕາ
Military attache	thùut thā-hǎan	ທູດທະຫາ
Sea crabs	kápúu thālée	ກະບູທະເລ
Fresh water fish	paa nàm cýyt	ປານ້ຳຈືດ

We call the liquid that comes out of the eyes, tears.

háv ໂນ nàm thīi ôok máa câak taa wāa nàm taa.

ເຮົາເອີ້ນນ້ຳທີ່ອອກມາຈາກຕາວ່າ ນ້ຳຕາ.

We call an envoy who is in the military service, a military attache.

háv ໂນ thùut thīi pen thā-hǎan wāa thùut thā-hǎan.

ເຮົາເອີ້ນທູດທີ່ເປັນທະຫາວ່າ ທູດທະຫາ .

continued...

M-2 Continued

We call fish that live in fresh-water, fresh-water fish.	háv ʎn paa thīi aasǎj jūu náj nàm cŷyt wāa paa nàmcyt.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນປາທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ ນ້ຳຈືດວ່າ ປານ້ຳຈືດ.
--	---	--

C-1

- A. What is fresh-water fish?
- B. Fresh-water fish are fish that live in fresh-water.

- A. paa nàmcyt mēen njǎn?
- B. paa nàmcyt mēen paa thīi aasǎj jūu náj nàmcyt.

ໃນບົດຮຽນບົດນີ້ ຂໍ ບົດຕ່ຳໄປ ັກຮຽ ກໍມີແຕ່ຈະຝຶກຫັດກ່ຽວກັບ ຊອກເຂົ້າໃຈ ຫມາຍຂອງຄຳຫລືວ່າ ປະກອບ ຄຳຕ່າງໆ ຂໍພາສາຍັງມີອີກຫລາຍວິທີກວ່ານີ້ ຈົ່ງຄິດຄື ເອົາມາສອ ເຂົ້າກູ້ມເບິ່ງດູ!

CYCLE- 83

M-1

Shy	aaj	ອາຍ
Lazy	khîi khàan	ຂີ້ຄ້ານ
Afraid	jàan	ຢ້າ
Lie	túa,	ຕົວະ
Steal	lāk	ລັກ
Cheat	koon	ໂກງ

How do we call a person who is always shy?	háv ḷḷn khón thīi aaj jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa jāaṅ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ອາຍຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?
How do we call a person who is always lazy?	háv ḷḷn khón thīi khîi khàan jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa jāaṅ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ຂີ້ຄ້ານຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?
How do we call a person who is always afraid?	háv ḷḷn khón thīi jàanjūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa jāadaṅ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ຢ້າ ຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?
How do we call a person who's given to lying?	háv ḷḷn khón thīi túa, jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa jāaṅ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ຕົວະຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?
How do we call a person who's given to stealing?	háv ḷḷn khón thīi lāk jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa jāaṅ daj?	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ລັກຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

M-2

Forgetful	lýym	ລຶມ
Grumble	bāj	ໄບ່
Stingy	khîi thîi	ຂີ້ຖີ່
Brag	khúj	ຄຸຍ
Drunk	máv	ເມົາ
Cry	hâj	ໄຫ້

We call a person who's given to forgetting, a forgetful person. háw ṽn khón thîilýym jūulỳaj lỳaj wāa khón khîi lýym. ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ລຶມ ຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າ ຄົນຂີ້ລຶມ.

We call a person who's given to stinginess, a stingy person. háw ṽn khón thîi khîi thîi jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa khón khîi thîi. ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ຂີ້ຖີ່ຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າ ຄົນຂີ້ຖີ່.

We call a person who is always drunk, a drunkard. háw ṽn khón thîi máv jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa khón khîi máv. ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ເມົາເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າ ຄົນຂີ້ເມົາ.

We call a person who's given to crying, a cry baby. hàw ṽn khón thîi hâj jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāa khón khîi hâj. ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົນທີ່ໄຫ້ຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆ ວ່າ ຄົນຂີ້ໄຫ້.

M-3

Jailbird	khón khîi khūk	ຄົນຂີ້ຄູກ
Cardshark	khón khîi phàj	ຄົນຂີ້ໄພ້
Opium addict	khón khîi jaa	ຄົນຂີ້ຢາ
Sickly person	khón khîi phā-njàat	ຄົນຂີ້ພະຍາດ
Leper	khón khîi thùut	ຄົນຂີ້ທູດ
Alcoholic	khón thîi lâw	ຄົ ຂີ້ເຫຼົ້າ

What's a jailbird? khón thîi khūk mēen khón núpudaj? ຄົນຂີ້ຄູກ ແມ່ ຄົ ແ ວໃດ?

What's a opium addict? khón khîi jaa mēen khón núpudaj? ຄົນຂີ້ຢາ ແມ່ ຄົ ແ ວໃດ?

What's a sickly person? khón khîi phā-njàat mēen khón núpudaj? ຄົ ຂີ້ພະຍາດ ແມ່ ຄົ ແ ວໃດ?

What's an alcoholic? khón khîi lâw mēen khón núpudaj? ຄົນຂີ້ເຫຼົ້າ ແມ່ ຄົ ແ ວໃດ?

M-4

In and out of jail, (to be)	títkhūk jūu sám↗↗	ຕິດຄູກຢູ່ສະເໝີ
Play cards	lín phàj	ຫຼິ້ນໄພ້
Gambling	kaan phānán	ກາ ພະ↗
Addicted to opium	tít jaa-fīn	ຕິດຢາຝິນ
Drink to excess	d̄yym lâw lǎaj k↗↗n paj	ດື່ມເຫຼົ້າຫລາຍເກີ ໄປ
Always sick	bōo sábaaj jūu sám↗↗	ບໍ່ສະບາຍຢູ່ສະເໝີ

A jailbird is a person khón khîi khūk mēen khón ຄົນຂີ້ຄູກ ແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ຕິດຄູກຢູ່ສະເໝີ.
 who is in and out of jail. thīi títkhūk jūu sám↗↗.

A cardsharp is a person khón khîi phàj mēen khón ຄົນຂີ້ໄພ້ ແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ຫຼິ້ນໄພ້
 who plays cards for money thīi lín phàj pen kaan phānán. ເປັ ກາ ພະ↗ .

An opium addict is a person khón thīi jaa mēen khón ຄົນຂີ້ຢາແມ່ນຄົນທີ່ຕິດຢາຝິນ.
 who is addicted to opium. thīi tít jaa fīn

An alcoholic is a person khón khîi lâw mēenkhón thīi ຄື ຂີ້ເຫຼົ້າແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ດື່ມເຫຼົ້າ
 who drinks to excess. d̄yym lâw lǎaj k↗↗n paj. ຫຼາຍເກີ ໄປ.

C-1

A. What do we call a person who is always shy? A. háw ↗↗n khón thīi aaj jūu l̄yāj l̄yāj wā jāaṅ daj? B. We call a person who is shy person. B. háw ↗↗n khón thīi aaj jūu l̄yāj l̄yāj wā khón khîi aaj. always shy, a

C-2

A. What's a jailbird? A. khón khîi khūk mēen khón n̄w̄w̄w̄daj?
 B. A jailbird is the person who is in and out of jail. B. khón khîi khūk mēen khón thīi títkhūk jūu sám↗↗.

CYCLE - 84

M-1

Work with wood	hēt-wiak kīawkáp màj	ເຮັດວຽກກ່ຽວກັບໄມ້
Fix cars	puyuy lōt	ແປງລົດ
Work with electricity	hēt-wiak kīawkáp fájfaa	ເຮັດວຽກກ່ຽວກັບໄຟຟ້າ
Build houses	púk hýan	ບຸກເຮືອ
Make things out of gold	tii khám	ຕີຄໍາ
Make things out of iron	tii lék	ຕີເຫລັກ

How do we call a person who fixes cars? háw ḽn khón thīi puyuy lōt wāa jāaṅ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ແປງລົດວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?

How do we call a person who works with electricity? hàw ḽn khón thīi hēt-wiak kīawkáp fájfaa wāa jāaṅ daj ເຮົາເອີ້ນ ຄົ ທີ່ເຮັດວຽກກ່ຽວກັບ ໄຟຟ້າວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

How do we call a person who builds houses? háw ḽn khón thīi púk hýan wāa jāaṅ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ບຸກເຮືອ ວ່າ ຢ່າງໃດ?

How do we call a person who makes things out of gold? háw ḽn khón tii khám wāa jāaṅ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ຕີຄໍາວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

M-2

A wood worker	sāaŋ məj	ຊ່າງໄມ້
Car mechanic	sāaŋ puuŋ lōt	ຊ່າງເບຽລົດ
An electrician	sāaŋ fáj fàa	ຊ່າງໄຟຟ້າ
House-builder	sāaŋ púk hýan	ຊ່າງປຸກເຮືອ
A watch repair man	sāaŋ puuŋ móoŋ	ຊ່າງເບຽໂມງ
A blacksmith	sāaŋ tii lék	ຊ່າງຕີເຫລັກ
A goldsmith	sāaŋ tii khám	ຊ່າງຕີຄໍາ

We call a person who fixes cars, a car mechanic.	háv ʔn khón thīi puuŋ lōt wāa sāaŋ puuŋ lōt.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ເບຽລົດວ່າ ຊ່າງເບຽລົດ.
We call a person who works with electricity, electrician.	háv ʔn khón thīi hēt-wiak kīawkáp fáj fàa wāa sāaŋ fáj fàa.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ເຮັດວຽກກ່ຽວກັບ ໄຟຟ້າວ່າ ຊ່າງໄຟຟ້າ.
We call a person who builds houses, a house builder.	háv ʔn khón thīi púk hýan wāa sāaŋ púk hýan.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ປຸກເຮືອ ວ່າ ຊ່າງປຸກເຮືອ .
We call a person who makes things out of gold, a goldsmith.	háv ʔn khón tii khám wāa sāaŋ tii khám	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ຕີຄໍາວ່າ ຊ່າງຕີຄໍາ.

M-3

Barber	sāaṅ tāt phǒm	ຊ່າງຕັດຜົມ
Builder	sāaṅ kōo sâaṅ	ຊ່າງກໍ່ສ້າງ
Photographer	sāaṅ thāaj hùup	ຊ່າງຖ່າຍຮູບ
Tailor	sāaṅ tāt kh̄yaṅ nūṅ	ຊ່າງຕັດເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງ
Painter	sāaṅ tháa sǐi	ຊ່າງທາສີ
Painter	sāaṅ tètum	ຊ່າງແຕ້ມ

What does a barber do?	sāaṅ tāt phǒm mēen phūu thīi hēt njǎṅ?	ຊ່າງຕັດຜົມແມ່ ຜູ້ທີ່ເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What does a builder do?	sāaṅ kōo sâaṅ mēen phūu thīi hēt njǎṅ?	ຊ່າງກໍ່ສ້າງແມ່ ຜູ້ທີ່ເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What does a photographer do	sāaṅ thāaj hùup mēen phūu thīi hēt njǎṅ?	ຊ່າງຖ່າຍຮູບແມ່ ຜູ້ທີ່ເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What does a tailor do?	sāaṅ tāt kh̄yaṅ nūṅ mēen phūu thīi hēt njǎṅ?	ຊ່າງຕັດເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງແມ່ ຜູ້ທີ່ເຮັດ ຫຍັງ?
What does a painter do?	sāaṅ tháa sǐi mēen phūu thīi hēt njǎṅ?	ຊ່າງທາສີແມ່ ຜູ້ທີ່ເຮັດຫຍັງ?

M-4

Know how to cut hair	tát phǒm pen	ຕັດຜົມເປັ
Know how to build	kōo sâaṅ pen	ກໍ່ສ້າງເປັ
Know how to tailor	tát khÿaṅ nūṅ pen	ຕັດເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງເປັ
Know how to take pictures	thāaj hùup pen	ຖ່າຍຮູບເປັ
Know how to paint	tháa sǐi pen	ທາສີເປັ
Know how to paint (pictures)	tèuṃ hùup pen	ແຕ້ມຮູບເປັ

A barber is a person who sâaṅ tát phǒm mēen khón knows how to cut hair. thīi tát phǒm pen.	ຊ່າງຕັດຜົມແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ ຕັດຜົມເປັ .
A builder is a person who sâaṅ kōo sâaṅ mēen khón knows how to build. thīi kōo sâaṅ pen.	ຊ່າງກໍ່ ສ້າງແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ກໍ່ສ້າງເປັ .
A tailor is a person who sâaṅ tát khÿaṅ nūṅ mēen Knows how to make khón thīi tát khÿaṅ clothing. nūṅ pen.	ຊ່າງຕັດເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ ຕັດ ເຄື່ອງ ຸ່ງເປັ .
A photographer is a person sâaṅ thāaj hùup mēen who knows how to take khón thīi thāajhùup pen. pictures.	ຊ່າງຖ່າຍຮູບແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ ຖ່າຍຮູບເປັ .
A painter is a person who sâaṅ tháa sǐi mēen khón knows how to paint. thīi tháa sǐi pen.	ຊ່າງທາສີແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ທາສີເປັ .
A painter is a person who sâag tèuṃ mēen khón thīi knows how to paint tèuṃ hùup pen. pictures.	ຊ່າງແຕ້ມແມ່ ຄື ທີ່ແຕ້ມຮູບເປັ .

CYCLE - 85

M-1

Go to school	paj hóoŋhían	ໄປໂຮງຮຽນ
Study (at a high level)	sýksǎa	ສຶກສາ
Travel	thōoŋthīaw	ທ່ອງທ່ຽວ
Rob other people	pùn khón ȳyn	ປຸ້ ຄື ອື່ນ
Investigate	sýypsǎan	ສືບສວ
Fight in a war	rōp s'k	ຮົບເສິກ
Compose songs	tēeŋ phéeŋ	ແຕ່ງເພງ

What do we call a person who goes to school? háw ṽn khón thīi paj hóoŋhían wā jāaŋ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ໄປໂຮງຮຽນ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

What do we call a person who studies at a high level? háw ṽn khón thīi sýksǎa wā jāaŋ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ສຶກສາວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

What do we call a person who is travelling? háw ṽn khón thīi thōoŋthīaw wā jāaŋ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ທ່ອງທ່ຽວວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

What do we call a person who robs other people? háw ṽn khón thīi pùn khón ȳyn wā jāaŋ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ປຸ້ ຄື ອື່ນວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

What do we call a person who investigates? háw ṽn khón thīi sýypsǎan wā jāaŋ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ສືບສວ ວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

What do we call a person who fights in a war? háw ṽn khón thīi rōp s'k wā jāaŋ daj? ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ຮົບເສິກວ່າຢ່າງໃດ?

M-2

Pilot a plane	káp h́ya-bin	ຂັບເຮືອບິ
Pilot	nāk bin	ນັກບິ
Writer	nāk khǎn	ນັກຂຽ
Dance well	tèn-lám kēṅ	ເຕັ້ນລໍາເກັ່ງ
Dancer	nāk tèn-lám	ນັກເຕັ້ນ ລໍາ
Like to go out and face danger	mākôokphá-con	pháj ມັກອອກຜະຈີ ໄພ
Good in singing	hòວṅ phéṅ kēṅ	ຮ້ອງເພງເກັ່ງ
Singer	nāk hòວṅ	ນັກຮ້ອງ
Boxer	nāk múaj	ນັກມວຍ

We call the person who pilots a plane, a pilot.	háv ṽn khón thīi káp h́yabin wāa nākbin	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ຂັບເຮືອບິ ວ່າ ນັກບິ .
We call the person who writes books, an author.	háv ṽn khón thīi khǎn pým wāa nāk khǎn.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ຂຽ ບໍ່ມວ່າ ນັກຂຽ .
We call the person who likes to go out and faces danger, a daredevil.	háv ṽn khón thīi māk ôok pha-con pháj wāa nāk phá-con-pháj.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ມັກອອກຜະຈີ ໄພວ່າ ນັກຜະຈີ ໄພ.
We call the person who is good in singing, a singer.	háv ṽn khón thīi hòວṅ phéṅ kēṅ wāa nāk hòວṅ.	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ຮ້ອງເພງເກັ່ງວ່າ ນັກຮ້ອງ.
We call the person who boxes well, a boxer.	háv ṽn khón thīi tii múaj kēṅ wāa nāk múaj	ເຮົາເອີ້ນຄົ ທີ່ ຕີມວຍເກັ່ງວ່າ ນັກມວຍ.

M-3

Musician	nāk dontrii	ນັກດີ ຕຣີ
Scientist	nāk wīt-thā-njáa-sâat	ນັກວິທຍາສາດ
Diplomat	nāk kaan-thùut	ນັກກາ ທູດ
Politician	nāk kaan-mýaᅇ	ນັກກາ ເມືອງ
Athlete	nāk kii-láa	ນັກກີລາ
Journalist	nāk naᅇᅇ-syᅇᅇ-phím	ນັກທັງສືພິມ
Prisoner	nāk thòot	ນັກໂທດ

What's a musician?	nāk dontrii mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກດີ ຕຣີແມ່ ທຍັງ?
What's a scientist?	nāk wīt-thā-njáa-sâat mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກວິທຍາສາດແມ່ ທຍັງ?
What's a diplomat?	nāk kaan-thùut mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກກາ ທູດແມ່ ທຍັງ?
What's a politician?	nāk kaan-mýaᅇ mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກກາ ເມືອງແມ່ ທຍັງ?
What's an athlete?	nāk kii-láa mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກກີລາແມ່ ທຍັງ?
What's a journalist?	nāk naᅇᅇ-syᅇᅇ-phím mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກທັງສືພິມແມ່ ທຍັງ?
What's a prisoner?	nāk thòot mēen njǎᅇ?	ນັກໂທດແມ່ ທຍັງ?

M-4

Play music well	lín dontrii kēṅ	ຫຼິ້ນດົນຕີເກັ່ງ
Study and carry out researchs in the field of science.	sŷksăa khòn-khwàa tháaṅ dàan wīt-thā-njáa-sáat	ສຶກສາຄົ້ ຄວ້າທາງດ້າ ວິທຍາສາດ
Official in the embassy	càw-nâa-thīi tháaṅ kaan jūu náj sá-thăan thùut	ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ທາງກາ ຢູ່ໃ ສະຖາ ທູດ
Work in politics	lín kaan mýaṅ	ຫຼິ້ນກາ ເມືອງ
Play sport	lín kii-láa	ຫຼິ້ນກີລາ
Write for a newspaper	khǎan khāaw lóng naṅ-syṅ phím	ຂຽ ຂ່າວລິງທັງສີພິມ
Imprisoned	tít-khūk	ຕິດຄຸກ

A musician is a person who plays music well.	nāk dontrii mēen khón thīi lên dontrii kēṅ.	ນັກດົ ຕີເມ່ ຄີ ທີ່ຫຼິ້ນ ດີ ຕີເກັ່ງ.
A diplomat is a person who is an official in the embassy.	nāk kaan thùut mēen khón thīi pen càw-nâa-thīi tháaṅ kaan jūu náj sá-thăan thùut.	ນັກກາ ທູດເມ່ ຄີ ທີ່ ເປັ ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ທາງກາ ຢູ່ໃ ສະຖາ ທູດ.
A politician is a person who works in politics.	nāk kaan mýaṅ mēen khón thīi lín kaan mýaṅ.	ນັກກາ ເມືອງເມ່ ຄີ ທີ່ ຫຼິ້ນ ກາ ເມືອງ.
A athlete is a person who plays sports.	nāk kii-láa mēen khón thīi lín kii-láa.	ນັກກີລາເມ່ ຄີ ທີ່ ຫຼິ້ນກີລາ.

continued...

M-4 Continued

A journalist is a person who writes for a newspaper.	nāknaṅ-syṅphím mēen khón thīi khǎn khāaw lón naṅ-syṅphím.	ນັກ​ທັງ​ສື່​ພິມ​ແມ່ນ​ຄົນ​ທີ່​ຂຽນ​ຂ່າວ​ລົງ​ທັງ​ສື່​ພິມ.
A prisoner is a person who is imprisoned.	nāk thóot mēen khón thīi títkhūk	ນັກ​ໂທດ​ແມ່ນ​ຄົນ​ທີ່​ຕິດ​ຄູກ.

C-1

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. What do we call a person who goes to school? | A. háw ḷḷn khón thīipaj hóoṅhían wāajāaṅ daj? |
| B. We call a person who goes to school, a student. | B. háw ḷḷn khón thīi paj hóoṅhían wāa nākhían. |

C-2

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. What do we call a person who pilots a plane? | A. háw ḷḷn khón thīi kháp hýabin wāa jāaṅ daj? |
| B. We call a person who pilots a plane, a pilot. | B. háw ḷḷn khón thīi kháp hýabin wāa nākbin. |

C-3

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. What's a musician? | A. nākdontrii mēen njǎṅ? |
| B. A musician is a person who plays music well. | B. nākdontrii mēen khón thīi lēn dontrii kēṅ. |